

Universitätsbibliothek der HU Berlin

01311100096171



Zweigbibliothek Fremdspr. Philol. /Slaw.

Oxford Russian Grammar & Verbs

- Comprehensive and easy to use
- Covers all the key points of Russian grammar
- Clear and simple explanations
- Thousands of examples
- All grammatical terms explained in a glossary
- Detailed tables of regular and irregular Russian verbs

Terence Wade is Emeritus Professor and Research Fellow in Russian Studies at the University of Strathclyde, Glasgow. His other books include *A Comprehensive Russian Grammar*, *Russian Etymological Dictionary*, and *The Russian Language Today*.

Series Adviser, Dr Richard Ingham, is Lecturer in Linguistic Science at the University of Reading.

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.oup.com

AskOxford.[®]
Oxford Dictionaries Passionate about language

ISBN 0-19-860380-0



9 780198 603801 >

£7.99 RRP \$14.95 USA

Oxford Russian Grammar & Verbs

**Clear and simple
explanations**

New

The World's Most Trusted Dictionaries

The Oxford Russian Grammar and Verbs

Terence Wade

Oxford New York
Oxford University Press
2002

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi
São Paulo Shanghai Singapore Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

Published in the United States
by Oxford University Press Inc., New York

© Terence Wade 2002

First published 2002

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,
or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Data available

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Data available

ISBN 0-19-860380-0

3

Typeset in Slimbach and Trade Gothic

by Read Setter

Printed in Great Britain by

Clays Ltd, Bungay, Suffolk

I Contents

Preface	iii
Acknowledgements	iv
List of abbreviations	iv
The noun	1
The adjective	43
The pronoun	63
The numeral	80
The verb	96
Verb list	158
The adverb	172
The preposition	183
The conjunction	214
Word order	222
Punctuation	231
Glossary of grammatical terms	233
Index of subjects	245
Index of Russian words	249
The Russian alphabet	252

I Preface

The *Oxford Russian Grammar and Verbs* is part of a series of Oxford grammars of modern languages. It is designed for beginners and intermediate level learners at school or university as well as the adult studying the language on his/her own or at evening classes. It contains everything that is essential up to A level standard.

The text is divided into chapters dealing with the individual parts of speech, with particular emphasis given to the verb. There are also chapters on word order and punctuation. A separate glossary explains the grammatical terms used in the book and two indexes allow the user to look up individual points of grammar and individual Russian words.

The explanatory style of the book has been kept as simple as possible and numerous examples illustrate points of grammar as they arise. The design and layout of the text is arranged predominantly in single- and double-page spreads to aid ease of use. The verb list and the glossary of grammatical terms have a grey tint to the outside edge of the pages to enable quick reference.

Terence Wade

I Acknowledgements

The author would like to thank in particular Albina Ozieva who gave advice on Russian usage and the Russian examples, and Dr Della Thompson of OUP who oversaw the project and made many useful and helpful suggestions. Thanks are also due to Dr Richard Ingham, Series Adviser, for his valuable comments on the text.

I Proprietary terms

The inclusion in this book of any words which are, or are asserted to be, proprietary names or trademarks does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance, nor is any other judgement implied concerning their legal status.

I List of abbreviations

acc.	accusative
dat.	dative
fem.	feminine
gen.	genitive
impf.	imperfective
instr.	instrumental
intrans.	intransitive
masc.	masculine
MD	multidirectional
nom.	nominative
pf.	perfective
prep.	prepositional
trans.	transitive
UD	unidirectional

The noun

A noun names a person, animal, thing, natural phenomenon, quality, substance, fact, event, abstract notion, etc.:

мáльчик boy

собáка dog

стул chair

добротá kindness

I Gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter)

(a) Nouns that denote male persons or animals are masculine:

брат brother

мужчíна man

барáн ram

(b) Those that denote female persons or animals are feminine:

сестrá sister

мать mother

тигрíца tigress

(c) The gender of nouns that denote things, phenomena, qualities, etc. depends on the ending of the noun.

Masculine nouns

(a) All nouns ending in a **consonant** or **-й** are masculine, as are some ending in a **soft sign** (**ь**):

заво́д factory

музе́й museum

дождь rain

(b) Masculine nouns ending in a soft sign include ‘natural’ masculines, animate and inanimate agent nouns in **-тель**, the names of months ending in a soft sign, and others whose gender has to be learnt individually:

пáрень lad **июль** July

писáтель writer **слóвáрь** dictionary

двíгатель engine **день** day

Feminine nouns

All nouns ending in **-а/-я** are feminine (except for ‘natural’ masculines and neuter nouns in **-мя**), as are nouns in **-ия**:

кни́га book

бúря storm

стáнция station

Also, very many nouns ending in a soft sign, including:
nouns that denote females;

nouns in **-жь**, **-чь**, **-шь**, **-щь**, **-знь**;

nouns in **-сть** (except **гость** ‘guest’ and **тесь** ‘father-in-law’);

nouns derived from adjectives and verbs:

мать mother **рожь** rye

ночь night **мышь** mouse

вещь thing **жизнь** life

честь honour **зéлень** greenery

зáпись recording

There are also many others whose gender has to be learnt individually.

Neuter nouns

Most nouns ending in **-о** or **-е** and all nouns in **-ие**, **-ье**, **-ъё**, or **-мя** are neuter:

слово	word
мóре	sea
здáние	building
счáстье	happiness
ружьё	shot-gun
врéмя	time

Common gender nouns in **-а/-я**

These nouns are masculine or feminine, depending on the sex of the person involved:

коллéга	colleague (masculine or feminine)
----------------	-----------------------------------

Indeclinable names of **animals** are also of common gender:

кенгуру́	kangaroo
шимпанзé	chimpanzee

The names of many **professions** are grammatically masculine, but take a feminine short-form adjective or past tense when the practitioner is a woman: **Врач довольна.** **Врач писáла** ‘The (female) doctor is pleased. The (female) doctor was writing’.

Indeclinable foreign nouns

Indeclinable foreign nouns (loanwords) end in **-ао**, **-ау**, **-е**, **-и**, **-о**, **-оя**, **-ы**, **-ю**, or **-э** and are mainly neuter (an exception is masculine **кофе** ‘coffee’), e.g.:

какáо	cocoa
нóу-хáй	know-how
кафé	cafe
таксíй	taxi
бистрó	bistro
шóу	show
интервью́	interview

I Number (singular and plural)

(a) Nouns are either singular, denoting one object or person (**стол** ‘table’, **жёнщина** ‘woman’), or plural, denoting more than one (**столы** ‘tables’, **жёнщины** ‘women’).

(b) The **masculine plural** is formed by the addition of a vowel, usually **-ы**, to nouns ending in a consonant (**-и** after **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ** [see page 6]):

автобус bus	автобус-ы buses
урок lesson	урок-и lessons
пляж beach	пляж-и beaches

or by the *replacement* of final **-й** or **-ь** by **-и**:

геро-й hero	геро-и heroes
голуб-ь dove	голуб-и doves

(c) The **feminine plural** is formed by the *replacement* of final **-а** by **-ы** (**-и** after **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ**):

ламп-а lamp	ламп-ы lamps
книг-а book	книг-и books

and of final **-я** or **-ь** by **-и**:

тёт-я aunt	тёт-и aunts
вещ-ь thing	веш-и things

(d) The **neuter plural** is formed by replacing **-о** by **-а, -е/-ё** by **-я**:

чувств-о feeling	чувств-а feelings
плать-е dress	плать-я dresses
ружь-ё shot-gun	ружь-я shot-guns

I Declension

There are six **cases**, each showing the function of a noun in the clause (only the most basic meanings or functions are given here):

Nominative

the subject of the clause **Отец пьёт**
 Father is drinking

Accusative

the object of the verb **Он пьёт вино**
 He drinks wine

Genitive

possession, ownership **Дом сына**
 My son's house

Dative

indirect object, recipient **Он дал книгу мальчику**
 He gave the book to the boy

Instrumental

with, by means of **Я пишу мёлом**
 I write with chalk

Prepositional/Locative

location **Я живу в городе**
 I live in town

- ! Note: (a) relics of the **vocative** case in: **Бóже мой!** 'my God!', **Гóсподи!** 'Good Lord!'.
- (b) some truncated forms are used with vocative meaning in colloquial Russian: **мам!** 'Mum!', **Нин!** 'Nina!', etc.
- (c) the prepositional/locative case is always used with a preposition.

I The declensions

There are three declensions:

The first declension: all masculine nouns (except those ending in **а/я**, and **путь** ‘way’) and all neuter nouns (except those ending in **-мя**)

The second declension: nouns in **а/я** (mainly feminine, with a few ‘natural’ masculines, e.g. **юноша** ‘youth’, **дядя** ‘uncle’, and nouns of common gender e.g. **сирота** ‘orphan’)

The third declension: feminine soft-sign nouns, neuter nouns in **-мя**, and masculine **путь** ‘way’

The first declension (masculine and neuter nouns)

The first declension subdivides into masculine nouns ending in a **consonant**, **-й**, or **-ь**, and neuter nouns ending in **-о**, **-е** (including **-иe/-ъe/-ъё**).

Masculine hard-ending nouns (nouns ending in a hard consonant)

Most masculine nouns follow the standard pattern (types 1 and 2 below). Others display variations conditioned by the spelling rules:

Spelling rule one: **ы** is replaced by **и** after the letters **г, к, х** and **ж, ч, ш, щ**

Spelling rule two: **о** can appear after the letters **ж, ч, ш, щ**, and **и** only if stressed, otherwise it is replaced by **е**.

! Note: the accusative singular and plural of all masculine **animate** nouns is the same as the genitive.

Types of masculine first-declension nouns ending in a hard consonant:

Type 1: **зал** ‘hall’ (inanimate nouns)

Type 2: **капитан** ‘captain’ (animate nouns)

Type 3: **парк** ‘park’ (nouns in **-г, -к, -х**)

Type 4: **рынок** ‘market’ (nouns in **-ок/-ек/-ёк**)

Type 5: **конец** ‘end’, **танец** ‘dance’ (nouns in **-ц**)

Type 6: **нож** ‘knife’ (nouns in **-ж, -ч, -ш, -щ**)

Type 1: Inanimate nouns, e.g. зал 'hall'

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	зал	зál-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	зал	зál-ы
<i>Gen.</i>	зál-а	зál-ов
<i>Dat.</i>	зál-у	зál-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	зál-ом	зál-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	зál-е	зál-ах

Nouns changing their stress in declension include гриб 'mushroom' (genitive грибá), двор 'yard', куст 'bush', лист 'sheet of paper', стол 'table', суд 'law court', труд 'labour', ум 'mind', хвост 'tail', etc. Note also Днепр 'Dnieper' and Пётр (genitive Петrá) 'Peter'.

Nominative/accusative plural in stressed -á

Some masculine hard-ending nouns take stressed -á in the nominative/accusative plural: адрес 'address', адресá 'addresses'; берег 'shore', берегá 'shores'; бок 'side', бокá 'sides'; век 'century', векá 'centuries'; вечер 'evening', вечерá 'evenings'; глаз 'eye', глазá 'eyes'; голос 'voice', голосá 'voices'; дом 'house', домá 'houses'; лес 'forest', лесá 'forests'; остров 'island', островá 'islands'; паспорт 'passport', паспортá 'passports'; поезд 'train', поездá 'trains', etc.

Prepositional/locative case in -ý

The following nouns take prepositional/locative stressed -ý after the prepositions **в** ‘in’ and **на** ‘on’ (*never* after **о** ‘about, concerning’: **о лёсе** ‘about the forest’, or **при** ‘in the presence of, attached to’: **при отце** ‘in father’s presence’, **при заводе** ‘attached to the factory’):

берег ‘bank’:	Он́и отды́хали на берегу́ моря They were relaxing at the seaside
Дон ‘the Don’:	Ростóв нахóдится на Дону́ Rostov is situated on the Don
лёд ‘ice’:	Он́и танцевáли на льду́ They were dancing on the ice
лес ‘forest’:	Грибы́ растúт в лесу́ Mushrooms grow in the forest
мост ‘bridge’:	Мы стоя́ли на мосту́ We were standing on the bridge
отпуск ‘holiday’:	Мы бы́ли в отпуску́ (colloquial variant of в отпуске) We were on holiday
пол ‘floor’:	Собáка спалá на полу́ The dog was sleeping on the floor
порт ‘port’:	Он рабóтает в порту́ He works in the port
ряд ‘row’:	Мы сидéли в пятом ряду́ We were sitting in row five
сад ‘garden’:	В саду́ растúт рóзы Roses grow in the garden
шкаф ‘cupboard’:	Бáше пальто висít в шкафу́ Your coat is hanging in the cupboard

Other nouns with stressed prepositional/locative in -ý (many of them monosyllabic) include бал ‘ball’, Крым ‘the Crimea’, лоб ‘forehead’ (на лбу ‘on the forehead’), нос ‘nose, prow of ship’, полк ‘regiment’, пост ‘post’, пруд ‘pond’, пот ‘mouth’ (во рту ‘in the mouth’), снег ‘snow’, угол ‘corner’ (в углу́ ‘in the corner’, на углу́ ‘on, at the corner’). For the ‘fleeting vowel’ in declension, see pages 10–11, 17.

Type 2: Animate nouns, e.g. капитán 'captain'

Note that the accusative singular and plural of masculine animate nouns is **the same as the genitive**:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	капитán	капитán-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	капитán-а	капитán-ов
<i>Gen.</i>	капитán-а	капитán-ов
<i>Dat.</i>	капитán-у	капитán-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	капитán-ом	капитán-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	капитán-е	капитán-ах

Similarly all animate masculine nouns, e.g. делегáт 'delegate', дирижёр 'conductor', инженéр 'engineer', кандидáт 'candidate', министр 'minister', офицér 'officer', поэт 'poet', турист 'tourist', чемпион 'champion', etc. (and, with stress change in declension, кит 'whale', accusative/genitive китá, слон accusative/genitive слонá 'elephant').

! Note: Some masculine animate nouns have nominative plural -á, e.g. дирéктор 'director', plural директорá 'directors' (accusative/genitive plural директорóв).

Type 3: Masculine nouns in г, к, х

Note that **-ы** is replaced by **-и** in the nominative/accusative plural in accordance with the spelling rule, e.g. **парк** 'park'.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	парк	пáрк-и
<i>Acc.</i>	парк	пáрк-и
<i>Gen.</i>	пáрк-а	пáрк-ов
<i>Dat.</i>	пáрк-у	пáрк-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	пáрк-ом	пáрк-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	пáрк-е	пáрк-ах

Similarly **банк** 'bank', plural **бáнк-и**, **флаг** 'flag', plural **флáг-и**, **слух** 'rumour', plural **слúх-и**, etc.

The **accusative** singular/plural of all masculine animate nouns (*see also page 9*) is the same as the **genitive**: **мáльчик** 'boy', accusative/genitive singular **мáльчик-а**, accusative/genitive plural **мáльчик-ов**.

Stress changes from stem to endings in **грузовíк**, genitive **грузовикá** 'lorry', **ученíк** 'pupil', **язык** 'language', etc.

Type 4: Masculine nouns in -ок/-ек/-ёк

The fleeting vowel **-о/ -е/ -ё** is lost in declension, e.g. **рынок** 'market'.

<i>Nom.</i>	рынок	рынк-и
<i>Acc.</i>	рынок	рынк-и
<i>Gen.</i>	рынк-а	рынк-ов
<i>Dat.</i>	рынк-у	рынк-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	рынк-ом	рынк-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	рынк-е	рынк-ах

Similarly **звонóк** 'bell', **значóк** 'badge', **катóк** 'rink', **конёк** 'skate', genitive **конькá**, **кусóк** 'piece', **мешóк** 'sack', **орéшek** 'nut', **песóк** 'sand', **платóк** 'headscarf', **подáрок** 'present', **порошóк** 'powder', etc. **Урóк** 'lesson', genitive **урóка**, **знатóк** 'connoisseur', genitive **знатокá**, and **игрóк** 'player', genitive **игрокá** retain **-о-** throughout declension.

The **accusative** singular/plural of animate nouns (*see also page 9*) is the same as the **genitive**: **знатóк** 'connoisseur', accusative/genitive singular **знатокá**, accusative/genitive plural **знатокóв**.

Type 5: Masculine nouns in -ец

Virtually all of these nouns end in **-е́ц**, with fleeting vowel **-е-** lost in declension, e.g. **конéц** 'end', genitive **концá**. Stem-stressed nouns have **-ем** in the instrumental singular and **-ев** in the genitive plural, since **о** may appear after **и** only in *stressed* position, e.g. **тáнец** 'dance', instrumental singular **тáнцем**, genitive plural **тáнцев**.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	конéц	конц-ы	тáнец	тáнц-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	конéц	конц-ы	тáнец	тáнц-ы
<i>Gen.</i>	конц-á	конц-óв	тáнц-а	тáнц-ев
<i>Dat.</i>	конц-ú	конц-áм	тáнц-у	тáнц-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	конц-óм	конц-áми	тáнц-ем	тáнц-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	конц-é	конц-áх	тáнц-е	тáнц-ах

Similarly (end stress): **дворéц** 'palace', **огурéц** 'cucumber', **отéц** 'father', **продавéц** 'sales assistant'; (stem stress): **péрец** 'pepper', **иностráнец** 'foreigner' (and many nationalities: **америкáнец** 'American', **нéмец** 'German', **шотлáндец** 'Scot', etc.).

- !** Note: (a) the second of two adjacent vowels is replaced by **-и-** in declension: **белъгíнец** 'Belgian', genitive **белъгíйца**, **китáец** 'Chinese', genitive **китáйца** (also **зáиц** 'hare', genitive **зáица**). The combination **-ле-** is replaced by **-ль-**: **пáлец** 'finger', genitive **пáльца**.
- (b) the vowel **е** is *retained* in declension where **-е́ц** is preceded by two or more consonants: **близнéц** 'twin', genitive **близнecá**, **кузнéц** 'blacksmith', genitive **кузнecá**, **мертвéц** 'dead person', genitive **мертвecá**.
- (c) the accusative singular/plural of *animate* nouns in **-е́ц** (see also page 9) is the same as the genitive singular/plural, thus **певéц** 'singer': Я слúшаю певцá/певцóв 'I listen to the singer/singers'.
- (d) **Мéсяц** 'month' declines like **тáнец** 'dance', but with no fleeting vowel, e.g. **дéвять мéсяцев** 'nine months'.

Type 6: Masculine nouns in ж, ч, ш, щ

Note: Nouns ending in the soft consonants ч and щ are included here since their declension is identical to that of nouns ending in the hard consonants ж and щ.

The plural form -ы is replaced by -и in accordance with the spelling rule (see page 6). Genitive plural is -ей, e.g. **нож** 'knife':

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	нож	нож-и
<i>Acc.</i>	нож	нож-и
<i>Gen.</i>	нож-а	нож-ей
<i>Dat.</i>	нож-у	нож-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	нож-ом	нож-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	нож-е	нож-ах

Note: Like **нож** 'knife', many of the nouns have end stress in declension, thus: карандаш 'pencil', genitive карандаш-á, likewise ключ 'key', плащ 'raincoat', этаж 'storey', etc. The instrumental singular ending of nouns with *stem* stress throughout declension is -ем (since -о can appear after -ж, -ч, -ш, and -щ only in stressed position), thus пляж 'beach' instrumental singular пляж-ем, товарищ 'comrade', instrumental singular товарищ-ем. Compare stem-stressed patronymic Сергеевич 'Sergeevich', instrumental Сергеевич-ем and end-stressed patronymic Ильич 'Il'ich', instrumental Ильич-ом.

The **accusative singular/plural** of masculine animate nouns (see also page 9) is the same as the **genitive**: врач 'doctor' accusative/genitive singular врач-а, accusative/genitive plural врач-ей.

Some special features of the masculine hard-ending declension

(a) The partitive genitive in -у

A number of nouns that denote substances have a partitive genitive (indicating that only part of a substance is involved) in -у: лук 'onions' (partitive genitive лук-у), сахар 'sugar' (partitive genitive сахар-у), суп 'soup' (partitive genitive суп-у), сыр 'cheese' (partitive genitive сыр-у), табак 'tobacco' (partitive genitive табак-у), and others (including народ 'people' (partitive genitive народ-у)). For partitive usage, see page 29.

(b) Nouns in which the genitive plural is identical with the nominative singular

The genitive plural of a number of nouns is the same as the nominative singular. The nouns fall into the following categories:

- (i) certain items of footwear: **ботинок** '(ankle-high) boot' (пáра ботинок 'a pair of (ankle-high) boots'), **сапóр** 'boot', **чулóк** 'stocking'
- (ii) certain measurements: **грамм** 'gram' (сто грамм '100 grams', but сто граммов in written Russian)
- (iii) certain nationalities: **грузин** 'Georgian', **румын** 'Romanian', **тúрок** 'Turk'. Since these are animate nouns, the genitive plural is also the *accusative* plural: Я ви́жу грузин, румын, тúрок 'I see the Georgians, the Romanians, the Turks'
- (iv) certain military terms: **солдáт** 'soldier', **партизáн** 'guerrilla' (the genitive plural of these animate nouns is also the *accusative* plural)
- (v) others: **раз** 'time' (5 раз 'five times'), **человéк** 'person' after cardinal and some indefinite numerals: 5 человек 'five people', **нéсколько человек** 'a few people' (but много людей 'a lot of people').

(c) Summary of genitive plural endings in hard-ending masculine nouns

Hard-ending nouns may have genitive plural endings **-ов**, **-ев**, or **-ей**.

-ов: the genitive plural of all hard-ending nouns (e.g. зал, 'hall' genitive plural зáлов), except for those ending in **-ж**, **-ч**, **-ш**, **-щ**, and stem-stressed nouns in **-и**

-ев: stem-stressed nouns in **-и**: мéсяц 'month', genitive plural мéсяцев

-ей: nouns in **-ж**, **-ч**, **-ш**, **-щ**: гарáж 'garage', genitive plural гаражéй

Note: (a) some nouns have 'zero' ending in the genitive plural (e.g. раз 'time', see above).

(b) the genitive plural of all masculine animate nouns (see also page 9) is also the accusative plural: Я знаю мáльчиков/испáнцев/врачей 'I know the boys/the Spaniards/the doctors'.

Masculine hard-ending nouns with irregular plural forms

Nominative plural -ья, genitive plural -ьев

	брат 'brother' <i>Plural</i>	лист 'leaf' <i>Plural</i>	стул 'chair' <i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	брáт-ья	лíст-ья	стúл-ья
<i>Acc.</i>	брáт-ьев	лíст-ья	стúл-ья
<i>Gen.</i>	брáт-ьев	лíст-ьев	стúл-ьев
<i>Dat.</i>	брáт-ьям	лíст-ьям	стúл-ьям
<i>Instr.</i>	брáт-ьями	лíст-ьями	стúл-ьями
<i>Prep.</i>	брáт-ьях	лíст-ьях	стúл-ьях

Лист meaning 'sheet of paper' (as opposed to 'leaf'), genitive листа, declines like зал 'hall'.

Nominative plural -ый, genitive plural -ый

	муж 'husband' <i>Plural</i>	сын 'son' <i>Plural</i>	друг 'friend' <i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	муж-ый	сынов-ый	друз-ый
<i>Acc.</i>	муж-е́й	сынов-е́й	друз-е́й
<i>Gen.</i>	муж-е́й	сынов-е́й	друз-е́й
<i>Dat.</i>	муж-ы́м	сынов-ы́м	друз-ы́м
<i>Instr.</i>	муж-ы́ми	сынов-ы́ми	друз-ы́ми
<i>Prep.</i>	муж-ы́х	сынов-ы́х	друз-ы́х

! Note: The accusative plural (and singular) of animate брат, друг, муж, and сын is the same as the genitive: Я вижу своих братьев 'I see my brothers', Я встречаю друзей 'I meet my friends', Они любят своих мужей/своих сыновей 'They love their husbands/their sons'.

Nouns in -анин/-янин: англичáнин ‘Englishman’/славянíн ‘Slav’

	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	англичáн-e	славян-e
<i>Acc.</i>	англичáн	славян
<i>Gen.</i>	англичáн	славян
<i>Dat.</i>	англичáн-am	славян-am
<i>Instr.</i>	англичáн-ами	славян-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	англичáн-ах	славян-ах

! Note: stress change in the plural of граждáн ‘citizen’: граждáне, accusative/genitive граждáн.

Господíн ‘gentleman’, котéнок ‘kitten’ (nouns in -ёнок denoting the young of animals and birds, -онок after -ж, -ч, -ш)

	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	господ-á	кот-ýта
<i>Acc.</i>	господ	кот-ýт
<i>Gen.</i>	господ	кот-ýт
<i>Dat.</i>	господ-ám	кот-ýтам
<i>Instr.</i>	господ-áми	кот-ýтами
<i>Prep.</i>	господ-áх	кот-ýтах

! Note: (a) ребéта, plural of ребёнок ‘child’ is a colloquial variant of дéти ‘children’.

(b) щенóк ‘puppy’ has plural щенýта or щенкí.

(c) nouns in -онок have plurals in -áта: волчóнок ‘wolf-cub’, plural волчáта.

	сосéд ‘neighbour’	хозяин ‘owner’
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	сосéд-и	хозяев-а
<i>Acc.</i>	сосéд-ей	хозяев
<i>Gen.</i>	сосéд-ей	хозяев
<i>Dat.</i>	сосéд-ям	хозяев-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	сосéд-ями	хозяев-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	сосéд-ях	хозяев-ах

Soft-ending masculine nouns (nouns in **-й** and **-ъ**)

Masculine nouns in **-й**

The case endings of masculine nouns in **-й** are the ‘soft’ equivalents of the endings of the ‘hard’ declension, cf. **зал** ‘hall’ and **муз-éй** ‘museum’:

Singular

hard nominative	зал	soft nominative	муз-é-й
hard accusative	зал	soft accusative	муз-é-й
hard genitive	зál-а	soft genitive	муз-é-я
hard dative	зál-у	soft dative	муз-é-ю
hard instrumental	зál-ом	soft instrumental	муз-é-ем
hard prepositional	зál-е	soft prepositional	муз-é-е

Plural

hard nominative	зál-ы	soft nominative	муз-é-и
hard accusative	зál-ы	soft accusative	муз-é-и
hard genitive	зál-ов	soft genitive	муз-é-ев
hard dative	зál-ам	soft dative	муз-é-ям
hard instrumental	зál-ами	soft instrumental	муз-é-ями
hard prepositional	зál-ах	soft prepositional	муз-é-ях

- ! Note: (a) the prepositional singular ending is **-е** in hard *and* soft declensions.
- (b) some nouns in **-ий** have prepositional locative endings in stressed **-ю** (see page 8 for hard-ending prepositional locative in stressed **-у**): **бои** ‘battle’, **в бою** ‘in battle’ (nominative plural **бои**, genitive plural **боёв**), **край** ‘edge’, **на краю** ‘on the edge’ (nominative plural **край**, genitive plural **краёв**).
- (c) nouns in **-ий** decline like **музéй** except for prepositional **-ии**: **гéний** ‘genius’, **о гéни-и** ‘about a genius’.
- (d) as elsewhere, the accusative of animate nouns (see also page 9) is the same as the genitive: **герой** ‘hero’, accusative/genitive singular **герои**, accusative/genitive plural **героев**.

Masculine nouns in -ъ

These have the same endings as nouns in -й, except for genitive plural -ей:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	спектáкль	спектáкл-и
<i>Acc.</i>	спектáкль	спектáкл-и
<i>Gen.</i>	спектáкл-я	спектáкл-ей
<i>Dat.</i>	спектáкл-ю	спектáкл-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	спектáкл-ем	спектáкл-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	спектáкл-е	спектáкл-ях

- ! Note: (a) учитель 'teacher', nominative plural учитељ, лагерь 'camp', nominative plural лагерј. (b) some of the nouns have a fleeting vowel that is lost in declension: день 'day', genitive дня, камень 'stone', genitive камня, корень 'root', genitive корня, etc. (c) some nouns take end stress in declension, with instrumental singular -ём, e.g. дождь 'rain', genitive дождј (под дождём 'in the rain'). (d) third-declension путь 'way' is of masculine gender, but declines partly like a feminine noun in the singular: genitive/dative/prepositional путј, instrumental путём.

Declension of люди 'people' and дети 'children'

<i>Nom.</i>	люд-и	дёт-и
<i>Acc.</i>	люд-ей	дет-ей
<i>Gen.</i>	люд-ей	дет-ей
<i>Dat.</i>	люд-ям	дет-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	люд-ьми	дет-ьми
<i>Prep.</i>	люд-ях	дет-ях

Neuter nouns in -о

Neuter nouns in -о have the same endings as hard-ending masculine nouns (e.g. **зал** 'hall', see page 7) except for nominative/accusative singular -о, nominative/accusative plural -а, and zero genitive plural, e.g. **блóдо** 'dish':

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	блóд-о	блóд-а
<i>Acc.</i>	блóд-о	блóд-а
<i>Gen.</i>	блóд-а	блюд
<i>Dat.</i>	блóд-у	блóд-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	блóд-ом	блóд-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	блóд-е	блóд-ах

Stress change in the plural

This occurs in many nouns, either from stem onto ending: **слóво** 'word', nominative plural **словá**, genitive plural **слов**, dative plural **словáм**; or from ending onto stem: **лицó** 'face', nominative plural **лица**, genitive plural **лиц**, dative plural **лицам**.

- ! Note: (a) -е- to -ë- in: **колесó** 'wheel' nominative plural **колёса**, genitive plural **колёс**, dative plural **колёсам**.
- (b) if two consonants precede -о, a vowel usually appears between them in the genitive plural, -о- if adjacent to к: **окнó** 'window', nominative plural **óкна**, genitive plural **óкон**, otherwise -е-: **письмó** 'letter', nominative plural **письма**, genitive plural **письем**.
- (c) яйцó 'egg', nominative plural **яйца**, genitive plural **яиц**.

Irregular plurals in -ья/ьев

дерево ‘tree’, nominative plural **дерёвья**, genitive plural **дерёвьев**
 крыло ‘wing’, nominative plural **крылья**, genitive plural **крыльев**
 перо ‘feather, pen’ nominative plural **пёрыя**, genitive plural
пёрыев

Irregular plurals in -и

колено ‘knee’, nominative plural **колёни**, genitive plural **колёней**
 (колён after prepositions: встать с колён ‘to rise from one’s knees’)

плечо ‘shoulder’, nominative plural **плечи**, genitive plural **плеч**
 ухо ‘ear’, nominative plural **уши**, genitive plural **ушей**

яблоко ‘apple’, nominative plural **яблоки**, genitive plural **яблок**

! Note: The genitive plural of лёто ‘summer’ is used as the genitive plural of год
 ‘year’ (пять лет назад ‘five years ago’).

Neuter nouns in -е, e.g. море ‘sea’

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	мóр-е	мор-я
<i>Acc.</i>	мóр-е	мор-я
<i>Gen.</i>	мóр-я	мор-ей
<i>Dat.</i>	мóр-ю	мор-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	мóр-ем	мор-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	мóр-е	мор-ях

Likewise поле ‘field’ and nouns in -ье (singular only):
 воскресенье ‘Sunday’, здоровье ‘health’, (не)счастье
 ‘(un)happiness’, and (singular only) end-stressed бельё ‘linen,
 underwear’ (в бельё ‘in one’s underwear’).

! Note: (a) плáтье ‘dress’, nominative plural **плáтья**, genitive plural **плáтьев**.
 (b) я is replaced by а after и, thus: сéрдце ‘heart’, genitive singular **сéрдца**,
 nominative plural **сердцá**.
 (c) a number of loanwords in -е- (and in -и etc., see page 3) do not decline.

Neuter nouns in **-ие**

Nouns in **-ие** decline like **мóре** ‘sea’ except for the prepositional singular in **-и** and genitive plural in **-й**, e.g. **событие** ‘event’

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	событи-е	событи-я
<i>Acc.</i>	событи-е	событи-я
<i>Gen.</i>	событи-я	событи-й
<i>Dat.</i>	событи-ю	событи-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	событи-ем	событи-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	событи-и	событи-ях

Many of the nouns are abstract and singular only, others have plurals: **влияние** ‘influence’, **впечатление** ‘impression’, **поколение** ‘generation’, etc.

Neuter (third-declension) nouns in **-мя**, e.g. **имя** ‘first name’

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	им-я	имен-á
<i>Acc.</i>	им-я	имен-á
<i>Gen.</i>	имен-и	имён
<i>Dat.</i>	имен-и	имен-áм
<i>Instr.</i>	имен-ем	имен-áми
<i>Prep.</i>	имен-и	имен-áх

Likewise **врёмя** ‘time’, **знача** ‘banner’ (nominative plural **значёна** genitive plural **значён**), and a number of less commonly-used nouns.

The second declension (nouns in -а/я)

Feminine nouns in -а

Type 1: feminine inanimate nouns, e.g. лáмпа 'lamp'

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	лáмп-а	лáмп-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	лáмп-у	лáмп-ы
<i>Gen.</i>	лáмп-ы	ламп
<i>Dat.</i>	лáмп-е	лáмп-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	лáмп-ой	лáмп-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	лáмп-е	лáмп-ах

- ! Note: (a) most feminine nouns in -а decline like лáмпа 'lamp'.
 (b) nouns in unstressed -ца, -жа, -ча, -ша, -ща take -ей in the instrumental singular (-о- can appear after these consonants only in stressed position):
 граница 'boundary', instrumental singular границей, likewise крыша 'roof',
 столица 'capital city', etc.
 (c) nouns in -жа, -ча, -ша, -ща take -и in the genitive singular and nominative/
 accusative plural.

Stress change

Many nouns in -а switch stress to the stem in the plural: странá 'country', plural стрáны, стран, странам, странами, странах (likewise войнá 'war', игрá 'game', главá 'chapter', etc. (-е- may change to -ё- under stress: звездá 'star', plural звёзды, звёзд, звёздам, звёздами, звёздах).

Type 2: Feminine animate nouns in -а, e.g. жéнщина 'woman':

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	жéнщин-а	жéнщин-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	жéнщин-у	жéнщин
<i>Gen.</i>	жéнщин-ы	жéнщин
<i>Dat.</i>	жéнщин-е	жéнщин-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	жéнщин-ой	жéнщин-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	жéнщин-е	жéнщин-ах

- ! Note: (a) the accusative plural of animate feminine nouns is identical with the genitive plural: Он вíдит корóв 'He sees the cows'.
 (b) many end-stressed nouns switch to stem stress in the plural: сиротá 'orphan' plural сирóты, with -е- to -ё- under stress: женá 'wife' plural жéны, жéн, жéнам, жéнами, жéнах. Likewise пчелá 'bee'.
 (c) a few 'natural' masculines (retaining masculine agreement: мой пáпа 'my Dad'), and common-gender nouns in -а, e.g. обжóра 'glutton' decline like жéнщина.

Type 3: Nouns in -га, -ка, -ха

Note that the vowel **-ы** is replaced by **-и** after **-г-**, **-к-**, **-х-** in the genitive singular and nominative/accusative plural, e.g. **кни́га** 'book':

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	кни́г-а	кни́г-и
<i>Acc.</i>	кни́г-у	кни́г-и
<i>Gen.</i>	кни́г-и	книг
<i>Dat.</i>	кни́г-е	кни́г-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	кни́г-ой	кни́г-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	кни́г-е	кни́г-ах

Type 4: Nouns that take -о- or -е- between consonants in the genitive plural, e.g. бáнка 'jar'

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	бáнк-а	бáнк-и
<i>Acc.</i>	бáнк-у	бáнк-и
<i>Gen.</i>	бáнк-и	бáнок
<i>Dat.</i>	бáнк-е	бáнк-ам
<i>Instr.</i>	бáнк-ой	бáнк-ами
<i>Prep.</i>	бáнк-е	бáнк-ах

Likewise бóлка 'roll' (genitive plural **бóлок**), буты́лка 'bottle' (буты́лок), вíлка 'fork' (вíлок), мárка 'stamp' (мáрок), оши́бка 'mistake' (оши́бок), перчáтка 'glove' (перчáток), пласти́нка 'record' (пласти́нок), тарéлка 'plate' (тарéлок).

- Note: (a) **-е-** appears in the genitive plural between **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, and **к**: игру́шка 'toy' (игр'ушек), кни́жка 'notebook' (кни́жек), лóжка 'spoon' (лóжек), пáчка 'packet' (пáчек), рубáшка 'shirt' (рубáшек), спíчка 'match' (спíчек), чáшка 'cup' (чáшек), or replaces **и** before **к**: копéйка 'kopeck' (копéек).
- (b) the accusative plural of animate nouns is the same as the genitive plural: дéвшка 'girl' (дéвшек), кóшка 'cat' (кóшек). See also page 9.
- (c) some other combinations of consonants have inter-consonantal vowel **-е-** in the genitive plural: свáдьба 'wedding' (свáдеб), соснá 'pine-tree' (сóсен), тюрьмá 'prison' (тóрем).
- (d) others have no inter-consonantal vowel in the genitive plural: бóкva 'letter of the alphabet' (букv), игрá 'game', прóсьба 'request', фóрма 'form', цíфра 'figure', шáхта 'mine', etc.

Feminine nouns in -я

In the declension of nouns in -я, the vowel endings of the hard declension **а, у, ы, о** are replaced by their soft equivalents: **я, ю, и, е.**

Буря 'storm' (note that -ь in the genitive plural preserves the softness of the final consonant):

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	буря	буря
<i>Acc.</i>	бурю	буря
<i>Gen.</i>	буря	буль
<i>Dat.</i>	буре	бурям
<i>Instr.</i>	бурей	бурями
<i>Prep.</i>	буре	бурях

! Note: (a) instrumental singular -ей under stress: земля 'land', instrumental singular землей.

(b) some nouns have inter-consonantal vowel -е- in the genitive plural (some with, some without a final soft sign): башня 'tower' (genitive plural башен), вишня 'cherry' (вишнен), деревня 'village' (деревень), спальня 'bedroom' (спален), туфля 'shoe' (туфель).

(c) кухня 'kitchen' takes -о- in the genitive plural: кухонь.

Feminine nouns in -ья: статья 'article'

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	статья	статьи
<i>Acc.</i>	статью	статьи
<i>Gen.</i>	статьи	статей
<i>Dat.</i>	статье	статьям
<i>Instr.</i>	статьей	статьями
<i>Prep.</i>	статье	статьях

Similarly nouns in unstressed -ья, except for instrumental singular -ьей and genitive plural -ий, e.g. гостья 'female guest', instr. singular гостьюей, genitive plural гостей.

Feminine nouns in -ия: армия ‘army’

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	áрми-я	áрми-и
<i>Acc.</i>	áрми-ю	áрми-и
<i>Gen.</i>	áрми-и	áрми-й
<i>Dat.</i>	áрми-и	áрми-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	áрми-ей	áрми-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	áрми-и	áрми-ях

Most of the nouns are loanwords: демонстрация ‘demonstration’ станция ‘station’ фамилия ‘surname’ экскурсия ‘excursion’, etc.

Feminine nouns in -ая, -ея: идея ‘idea’

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	идé-я	идé-и
<i>Acc.</i>	идé-ю	идé-и
<i>Gen.</i>	идé-и	идé-й
<i>Dat.</i>	идé-е	идé-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	идé-ей	идé-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	идé-е	идé-ях

Similarly стáя ‘pack (of wolves), flock (of birds), shoal (of fish)’, etc.

Summary of genitive plural endings in the second declension

Nouns in -а: zero ending: лáмпа ‘lamp’ (ламп) вíлка ‘fork’ (вíлок), лóжка ‘spoon’ (лóжек)

Nouns in -я: zero ending: бúря ‘storm’ (бурь), кáпля ‘drop’ (кáпель), бáшня ‘tower’ (бáшен)

Nouns in -ья: -ей: стáтья ‘article’ (стат-éй)

Nouns in -ья: -ий: гóстья ‘female guest’ (гост-ий)

Nouns in -ея/-ая: -й: стáя ‘pack’ (ста-й)

Nouns in -ия: -й: стáнция ‘station’ (стáнци-й)

The third declension (soft-sign feminine nouns: кровáть 'bed')

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	кровáть	кровáт-и
<i>Acc.</i>	кровáть	кровáт-и
<i>Gen.</i>	кровáт-и	кровáт-ей
<i>Dat.</i>	кровáт-и	кровáт-ям
<i>Instr.</i>	кровáть-ю	кровáт-ями
<i>Prep.</i>	кровáт-и	кровáт-ях

! Note: (a) some nouns have stressed **-и** in the prepositional/locative case (after the prepositions **в** 'in' and **на** 'on'): **на груди** 'on the chest', **в грязи** 'in the mud, covered in mud', **на двери** 'on the door', **в связи с** 'in connection with', **в глобальной сети** 'on the world-wide web', **в тени** 'in the shade'.

(b) the letter **я** is replaced by **а** after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, thus **вещь** 'thing', dative/instrumental/prepositional plural **вещ-ам**, **вещ-ами**, **вещ-ах**, likewise **мысь** 'mouse', **ночь** 'night', **речь** 'speech', etc.

(c) some nouns lose **-о-** in the genitive/dative/prepositional singular: **ложь** 'lie, falsehood', **лжи** (instr. **ложью**), likewise **любовь** 'love', **любви** (instr. **любовью**), etc.

(d) **дочь** 'daughter' declines **дочь**, **дóчери**, **дóчери**, **дóчерью**, **дóчери**, plural **дóчери**, **дóчерей**, **дóчерям**, **дóчерьми**, **дóчерях**. Likewise **мать** 'mother', except for instrumental plural **матерями**.

(e) the plural animate accusative/genitive rule applies to feminine soft-sign nouns: **Я люблю своих дóчерей** 'I love my daughters'. See also pages 21, 22.

(f) **путь** 'way' and neuter nouns in **-мя** also belong to the third declension (see also pages 6, 17, and 20).

Declension of surnames

Those in **-ев**, **-ёв**, **-ов**, **-ин**, **-ын** decline partly as nouns, partly as adjectives, e.g. **Бúнин**, **Бúнина**, **Бúнины**:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Бúнин	Бúнин-а	Бúнин-ы
<i>Acc.</i>	Бúнин-а	Бúнин-у	Бúнин-ых
<i>Gen.</i>	Бúнин-а	Бúнин-ой	Бúнин-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	Бúнин-у	Бúнин-ой	Бúнин-ым
<i>Instr.</i>	Бúнин-ым	Бúнин-ой	Бúнин-ыми
<i>Prep.</i>	Бúнин-е	Бúнин-ой	Бúнин-ых

! Note: (a) surnames in **-ский** and **-ой** (e.g. **Мáйский**, **Толстóй**) decline like adjectives.

(b) those in **-о** (**Бондарéнко**, **Хитровó**) do not decline.

(c) male foreign surnames ending in a consonant decline (e.g., **áдрес** **Фрýдриха Шíллера** 'Friedrich Schiller's address'), but not female (**áдрес** **Áнны Шíллер** 'Anna Schiller's address').

(d) foreign surnames in **-е**, **-и**, **-о**, **-у**, and stressed **-á** and **-á** (**Гёте**, **Тати**, **Морó**, **Шóу**, **Дюмá**) do not decline.

I Use of the cases

The nominative case

The nominative case denotes the subject of an action or state:

Моя сестра пишет письмо My sister is writing a letter
Машинा остановилась The car stopped

It is also used:

(a) to identify:

Это наша дача That is our **country cottage**
Это наши родители These are our **parents**

(b) to point out:

Вот мама There is Mum

(c) in definitions:

Россия – большая страна Russia is a big country

(d) in constructions involving possession, **нужный** ‘necessary’ and **нравиться/по-** ‘to please’:

У ученика есть линейка The pupil has a ruler
Немцу нужна карта The German needs a map
Детям понравится пьеса The children will like the play

(e) in comparisons after **чем** ‘than’:

Москва больше, чем Киев Moscow is bigger than Kiev

(f) in titles when the genre (‘novel’, ‘newspaper’, etc.) is also given:

Он читал газету <<Неделя>> He was reading the newspaper "Nedelya"

but

Он читал <<Неделио>> He was reading "Nedelya"

The accusative case

The accusative case denotes:

- (a) the object of a transitive verb:

Я купил картину I bought **a painting**

Мать любит сыновей The mother loves **her sons**

Она открыла дверь She opened **the door**

- (b) duration:

Он ждал всю весну He waited **all spring**

Он всё время шутит He jokes **the whole time**

- (c) repetition:

Я это говорил тысячу раз I have said that **1,000 times**

Я работаю каждый день I work **every day**

- (d) distance, weight, price:

Он бежал километр He ran **a kilometre**

Она плакала всю дорогу She cried **all the way**

Книга стоит сорок рублей The book costs **forty roubles**

Чемодан весит 20 килограммов The case weighs **20 kilos**

- (e) the object of **жаль** ‘sorry for’:

Ему жаль жену He is sorry for **his wife**

The genitive case

The genitive case denotes:

(a) possession:

машина отца father's car

(b) authorship:

роман Толстого a novel by Tolstoy

(c) the object of a verbal noun:

обработка информации the processing of information

(d) the whole in relation to a part:

спинка стула a chair-back

(e) descriptive detail:

дело первостепенной важности a matter of prime importance

(f) quantity (with indefinite numerals and the verb **хватать**/

хватить 'to be enough'):

много/немного людей many/not many people

мало/немало денег not much/quite a lot of money

несколько лет a few years

достаточно/недостаточно хлеба enough/not enough bread

Сколько человéк? How many people?

Хватит врёмени There will be enough time

The genitive also combines in quantitative meaning with the names of groups and collectives, measurements, and receptacles:

толпá людéй a crowd of people

тóнна углí a ton of coal

бокáл винá a glass of wine

The partitive genitive

(a) The partitive genitive is used with verbs that denote requesting/consuming/providing *part* of a substance or liquid, or a number of like objects:

Я хочу́/прошу́ молокá I want/ask for **some milk**

Он принёс спичек He brought **some matches**

(b) Except for **хотéть/за-** ‘to want’ and **просить/по-** ‘to request’, verbs involved tend to be perfective only:

Он выпил воды He drank **some water**

Она съела хлеба She ate **some bread**

! Note: imperfective **пить** and **есть** take the accusative case: **он пил воду** ‘he was drinking water’, **она ела хлеб** ‘she was eating bread’. Use of the accusative case with a perfective verb implies ‘all’: **Он выпил воду** He drank (all) the water
Она съела хлеб She ate (all) the bread

(c) Examples of the partitive genitive:

Я налил ему водки I poured him **some vodka**

Он заказал икры He ordered **some caviar**

Она нарвалá цветóв She picked **some flowers**

(d) Some nouns denoting substances have a partitive genitive in **-у́/ю**, used with verbs, receptacles, and indefinite numerals (see also page 12):

чáшка чáю a cup **of tea**

Дáйте мне сáхару Give me **some sugar**

кусóк сýру a piece **of cheese**

тарéлка сúпу a plate **of soup**

The **-а/-я** genitive forms of these nouns are also possible in these contexts and *must* be used when quantity is not implied: **зáпах чáя** ‘the smell **of tea**’ **ценá сáхара** ‘the price **of sugar**’, or when the noun is qualified by an adjective: **чáшка жíдкого чáя** ‘a cup **of weak tea**’.

The use of the genitive to denote non-existence or non-availability

Нет (past нé было, future не бýдет + genitive singular/plural) is used to denote non-existence or non-availability:

Нет ключá/ключéй There's no key/there're no keys

Нé было óзера/оэёр There wasn't a lake/there weren't any lakes

Не бýдет фíльма/фíльмов There won't be a film/any films

The construction is also used with persons:

Его нет/нé было/не бýдет дóма He isn't/wasn't/won't be in

However, the nominative is used to denote identification, compare:

Это былá не моя машина That wasn't my car

and

Нé было машины There wasn't a car

The construction can denote absence of possession/availability:

У менé нет врёмени I don't have the time

У него нé было детéй He didn't have any children

У них не бýдет телефóна They won't have a telephone

Analogous constructions involve other negated forms:

У нас не имéется свéдений We have no information

К утрú не осталóсь еды By morning there was no food left

Машин нé было вíдно There were no cars to be seen

Genitive or accusative after a negated transitive verb

(a) The genitive is often used after a negated transitive verb (one that normally takes the accusative; the rule does not affect negated verbs that take the dative or instrumental):

Онá ведёт дневник (accusative) She keeps a diary

Онá не ведёт дневника (genitive) She doesn't keep a diary

(b) The genitive is particularly common after a negated verb when **не** is reinforced by other negative forms: **никакой**, **ни один**, **ни**, etc.:

Он не сдёлал ни одной ошибки He didn't make a single mistake

Это не имеет никакого значения That has no significance at all

Не слышу ни слова I can't hear a (single) word

(c) It is also common when **не** combines with abstract nouns:

Не обращай внимания на него Pay no attention to him

Я не принял участия в споре I took no part in the argument

However, the *accusative* case is used after a negated verb:

(a) to distinguish specific objects (accusative) from objects in general (genitive):

Я не получил письма (genitive) I didn't receive a letter

Я не получил письмо (accusative) I didn't receive the letter

(b) when a person is the object of the verb:

Я не знаю твою мать I don't know your mother

(c) when some other part of the sentence, not the verb, is negated:

Не она пропустил поезд She wasn't the one who missed the train ('She' is negated)

Он сварил суп не как следует He didn't make the soup properly ('properly' is negated)

Я не считаю эту книгу полезной I don't consider this book useful ('useful' is negated)

(d) after **чуть не/едва не** 'almost'; **я не могу не** 'I can't help':

Я чуть не разбил вазу I almost broke the vase

Я не могу не любить их искусство I can't help liking their art

If in doubt, however, use the *genitive* after a negated transitive verb.

Adjectives that take the genitive

These (both long *and* short forms, *see page 43*) include **достоин** ‘worthy of’, **лишённый** ‘lacking in’, and **полный** ‘full of’:

Он достоин похвалы He is worthy of **praise**

Он лишен чувства юмора He lacks a **sense of humour**

Автобус полон народа The bus is full **of people**

Verbs that take the genitive

(a) Some verbs invariably take the genitive: **добиваться/добиться** ‘to achieve, to obtain’, **достигать/достичь от** **достигнуть** ‘to achieve’, **желать/по-** ‘to desire’, **заслуживать** ‘to deserve’, **касаться/коснуться** ‘to touch, touch on’:

Она добилась успеха She achieved **success**

Он достиг了自己的目的 He achieved **his aim**

Я желаю тебе счастья I wish you **happiness**

Это заслуживает её внимания That deserves her attention

Он коснулся её плеча He touched **her shoulder**

Я касаюсь важной темы I touch on **an important subject**

(b) Others take the genitive of nouns denoting generalized or abstract ideas and the accusative of those denoting persons and specific objects:

(i) verbs of waiting: **ждать** ‘to wait for’, **ожидать** ‘to expect’ :

Я ждал поезда/поеzd I was waiting for a/the **train**

Иван ждёт Машу Ivan is waiting for **Mary**

Мы ожидали своей очереди We were awaiting **our turn**

(ii) Verbs of seeking, asking, wanting:

искать 'to seek, try to obtain' (+ genitive), 'to look for, try to find' (+ accusative):

Мы ищем защиты We are seeking protection

Я ищу нужную мне книгу I am looking for a book I need

Она ищет работу She is trying to find work

просить/по- 'to request' + genitive of abstract nouns and substances (partitive genitive), accusative of objects and persons:

Я прошу прощения I ask forgiveness

Она просит хлеба She asks for some bread

Мальчик просит самокат The boy asks for a scooter

Она просит маму помочь He asks Mum to help

требовать/по- 'to demand' + genitive of abstract nouns, accusative of objects:

Она потребовала объяснения She demanded an explanation

Он требует квитанцию He demands a receipt

хотеть 'to want' + genitive of abstract nouns and substances (partitive genitive), accusative of objects:

Больше всего мы хотим мира Most of all we want peace

Хочешь чай? Would you like some tea?

Я хочу мобильный телефон I want a mobile phone

(iii) Verbs of fearing, avoiding: **бояться** 'to be afraid of', **избегать/избежать** 'to avoid' + genitive of abstract nouns, accusative of persons:

Он боится темноты He is afraid of the dark

Он боится жену He is afraid of his wife

Я избегаю неприятностей I avoid trouble

Она избегает свою сестру She avoids her sister

For the genitive with numerals, see pages 82–95, *passim*.

The dative case

The dative as indirect object of a verb

(a) A main function of the dative case is to act as the **indirect object** of a verb, that is to say, it denotes the recipient, addressee, or beneficiary of an action. The object received appears in the accusative case:

Она́ далá кни́гу мáльчику She gave **the boy** a book or She gave a book **to the boy**

Note: The English versions are synonymous, but only the second version contains a clear indication ('**to the boy**') that the boy is the recipient. In the first version this is inferred. In Russian the dative case (**мáльчику** 'to the boy') is used in rendering either version.

(b) Other verbs involved in the construction include **дарíть/по-** 'to give', **задавáть/задáть** 'to ask (a question)', **говорíть/сказáть** 'to tell', **покупáть/купíть** 'to buy', **показáывать/показáть** 'to show', **писáть/на-** 'to write', **посылáть/послáть** 'to send', **предлагáть/ предложíть** 'to offer', **продавáть/продáть** 'to sell', **звонíть/по-** 'to ring, telephone', **шиТЬ/с-** 'to sew, make', **платíть/за-** 'to pay':

Он пода́рил **невéсте** кольцó He gave **his fiancée** a ring

Он зáдал **ученику** вóпрос He asked **the pupil** a question

Она́ сказáла судье́ прáвdu She told **the judge** the truth

Она́ купíла сыну велосипéд She bought **her son** a bicycle

Он написáл матери́ письмо́ He wrote a letter **to his mother**

Он показáл сестré подáрок He showed **his sister** the present

Он предложíл бráту конфéту He offered **his brother** a sweet

Он прóдал свою́ машину дру́гу He sold his car **to a friend**

Рабóчий позвонíл инженéру The worker rang **the engineer**

Она́ сшила подrúge плáтье She made a dress **for her friend**

Я плачу́ касси́ру I pay **the cashier** (In this example, **дéньги** 'money' is understood.)

Он послáл чек сыну He sent a cheque **to his son**

Note: if a person is sent, the preposition **к** is used:

Они́ отпра́вили мáльчика к тёте They sent the boy **to his aunt**

Impersonal constructions with the dative case

(a) English nominative phrases denoting physical state ('I am/feel hot, cold, warm, comfortable', etc.) are the equivalent of phrases with the **dative case** in Russian:

Дéтям хóлодно The **children** feel cold

Сестрё теплó My **sister** feels warm

Туристам жárко The **tourists** feel hot

Бáбушке удóбно **Grandma** is comfortable

(b) The construction is also used to express state of mind, inclination, impression, and state of health:

Ученикáм скúчно The **pupils** are bored

Фéрмеру грúстно The **farmer** is sad

Как Мáша не стýдно! **Masha** should be ashamed!

Ивáну надоéло смотрéть телевíзор **Ivan** is/was bored
watching TV

Спортсмéну хóчется спать The **athlete** feels drowsy

Мне кáжется, что онá правá It seems to **me** that she is right

Больнóму сегóдня лúчше The **patient** feels better today

Adjectives that take the dative

Most of these correspond to English equivalents with 'to':

благодáрный 'grateful to', **вérный** 'faithful, loyal to', **знакомый** 'familiar to', **извéстный** 'known to', **подóбный** 'similar to',
послúшный 'obedient to', **рад** 'glad' (to see) (short form only):

Я благодáрен дру́гу I am grateful to my friend

Он бúдет вéрен женé He will be faithful to his wife

Эта мелóдия знакóма дéтям This tune is familiar to children

Его имя извéстно всем фíннам His name is known to all Finns

Его стихí подóбны пúшкинским His verse is similar to
Pushkin's

Ребёнок послúшен родítелям The child is obedient to its parents

Я всегдá рад Вéре I am always glad to see Vera

Verbs that take the dative

(a) Many verbs that take the dative describe rendering a service or complying: **помога́ть/помо́чь** ‘to help’, **служи́ть/по-** ‘to serve’, **сове́това́ть/по-** ‘to advise’, **соотвéтство́вать** ‘to correspond (to)’:

Дéвочка помогла ма́тери The little girl helped **her mother**
 ООН слúжит дéлу мíра The UNO serves the **cause of peace**
 Армия слúжит наро́ду The army serves the **people**
 Он совéтует же́нé согла́ситься He advises **his wife** to agree
 Это соотвéтству́ет юсти́не That **corresponds** to the truth

(b) Others imply hindrance or harm: **вреди́ть/по-** ‘to harm’, **грози́ть/при-** ‘to threaten’, **изменя́ть/изменíть** ‘to betray’ **меша́ть/по-** ‘to hinder, prevent’, **запреща́ть/запрети́ть** ‘to forbid’:

Курéние вреди́т здорóвию Smoking damages **the health**
 Онí грози́т залóжникам They threaten **the hostages**
 Я запрети́л дéтям кури́ть I forbade **the children** to smoke
 Шпион изме́нил рóдине The spy betrayed **his country**
 Шум меша́л отцу́ рабóтать The noise prevented **father** from working

(c) Others still denote attitude or reaction: **véрить/по-** ‘to believe’, **доверя́ть/довéрить** ‘to trust’, **завидо́вать/по-** ‘to envy’, **радо́ваться/об-** ‘to rejoice’, **удивля́ться/удиви́ться** ‘to be surprised’:

Никтó не вéрит полíтикам No one believes **politicians**
 Больно́й доверя́ет врачу́ The patient trusts **the doctor**
 Онá зави́дует своéй подругé She envies **her friend**
 Он обра́довался её успéхам He rejoiced at her **progress**
 Я удиви́лся егó словáм I was surprised at **his words**

! Note: Учи́ть ‘to teach’ takes the accusative of the person taught and the dative of the subject taught: Онá учíла детéй фíзики ‘She taught the **children physics**’.

The instrumental case

Functional meaning of the instrumental case

(a) The instrumental case denotes that the object in the instrumental is being used to perform a function: Он открыл дверь **ключом** ‘He opened the door **with a key**’. Likewise:

Он режет хлеб **ножом** He cuts the bread **with a knife**

Она пишет **карандашом** She writes **with a pencil**

Он копает лопатой He digs **with a spade**

Я плачу **рублями** I pay in (**‘with’**) roubles

Она кормит ребёнка **грудью** She breast-feeds the child

Note: If ‘with’ = ‘characterized by, carrying’, it is rendered by **с** + instrumental: ‘He speaks **with an accent**’ Он говорит **с акцентом**; ‘He stands **with an axe** in his hand’ Он стоит **с топором** в руке.

(b) The construction also involves parts of the body: Он двигает **рукой** ‘He moves his hand’, качать/по- **головой** ‘to shake one’s head’, **кивáть/кивнúть головой** ‘to nod one’s head’, **махáть/махнúть рукой** ‘to wave the hand’, **пожимáть/пожáть плечáми** ‘to shrug the shoulders’. Objects held in the hand can also appear in the instrumental: Он **хлóпнул дvéрью** ‘He slammed the door’.

The instrumental as agent in passive constructions

In a passive construction, the natural *object* of an action becomes the *grammatical subject*. In other words, the object of an action in an *active* construction becomes the grammatical *subject* in a *passive* construction:

Начальник уволил **его** The boss dismissed **him**

Он был уволен **начальником** He was dismissed **by the boss**

Note: The agent of the action (the boss) appears in the **instrumental**.

Adjectives that take the instrumental case

(a) Adjectives that take the instrumental case often appear in the short form. The instrumental 'delimits' the meaning of the adjective, specifying the sphere it relates to (e.g. rich **in coal**, etc.).

богатый 'rich':

Финляндия богата озёрами Finland is rich in **lakes**

больной 'sick':

Он болен туберкулёзом He has got **tuberculosis**

довольный 'pleased':

Мы довольны результатами We are pleased with **the results**

обязанный 'indebted':

Я обязан ему своим успехом I am indebted to him for **my success**

(b) A number of other adjectives are used with the instrumental in the meaning '**by virtue of**': Долина замечательна **своей красотой** 'The valley is remarkable **for its beauty**', Характером он похож на отца 'In temperament he is like his father'.

The use of the instrumental in giving dimensions

Unlike English ('30 metres **high**', '3 miles **wide**', etc.), Russian uses nouns instead of adjectives to indicate dimension (the construction is close to English 'in height', 'in depth', etc.):

здание высотой (в) 20 этажей a building 20 storeys **high**

озеро глубиной (в) 40 метров a lake 40 metres **deep**

стол длиной (в) три метра a table three metres **long**

поле площадью (в) 2.000 кв.м. a field 2,000 sq. m. **in area**

доска толщиной (в) два см. a plank two centimetres **thick**

улица шириной (в) 30 метров a street 30 metres **wide**

Note: (a) the preposition (в) can usually be omitted, especially in conversation and in specialist literature.

(b) dimension words in questions about dimension appear in the genitive case: Какой **ширины** долина? 'How **wide** is the valley?', Какого он **роста**? 'How **tall** is he?', etc.

Verbs that take the instrumental case

These include verbs that denote:

(a) use, control, ownership: **владеть** ‘to own’, **заведовать** ‘to manage, be in charge of’, **командовать** ‘to command’, **пользоваться/вос-** ‘to use’, **располагать** ‘to have at one’s disposal’, **руководить** ‘to be in charge of, supervise’, **управлять** ‘to manage, run’:

Она владеет большим домом She owns a large house

Он заведует городским транспортом He is in charge of city transport

Он командует дивизией He commands a division

Я не пользуюсь лифтом I don’t use the lift

Он руководит моей работой He supervises my work

Я располагаю свободным временем I have some spare time

Президент управляет страной The president runs the country

(b) attitude: **гордиться** ‘to be proud of’, **дорожить** ‘to value’, **интересоваться** ‘to be interested in’, **любоваться/по-** ‘to admire’, **увлекаться/увлекаться** ‘to be keen on’:

Он гордится своими детьми He is proud of his children

Она дорожит нашей дружбой She values our friendship

Он интересуется языками He is interested in languages

Она любуется пейзажем She admires the landscape

Он увлекается шахматами He is keen on chess

(c) various other meanings: **болеть** ‘to be sick with’, **дышать** ‘to breathe’, **жертвовать/по-** ‘to sacrifice’, **заниматься/заняться** ‘to be occupied with’, **пахнуть** ‘to smell of’, **рисковать/рискнуть** ‘to risk’, **страдать** ‘to suffer from’:

Она болеет бронхитом She has got bronchitis

Он дышит свежим воздухом He breathes fresh air

Она жертвует своей карьерой She sacrifices her career

Он занимается спортом He goes in for sport

Пахло овощами There was a smell of vegetables

Она рисковала своей жизнью She was risking her life

Он страдает бессонницей He suffers from insomnia

Adverbial expressions in the instrumental case

These comprise:

(a) parts of the day:

- утром** in the morning
- днём** in the daytime, in the afternoon
- вечером** in the evening
- ночью** at night

These can be expanded:

- сегодня утром** this morning
- однажды ночью** one night

(b) seasons of the year:

- весной** in spring **осенью** in autumn
- летом** in summer **зимой** in winter

These can also be expanded:

- ранней зимой** in **early** winter
- весной прошлого года** **last** spring
- этим летом** **this** summer

(c) modes of transport:

- поездом** by train
- самолётом** by air
- автобусом** by bus

Я вылетел первым рейсом I went out **on the first flight**

(d) manner:

- другими словами** in other words
- шёпотом** in a whisper
- каким образом?** in what way?
- таким образом** thus, in that way
- любой ценой** at all costs

The instrumental case after the verb 'to be'

(a) The instrumental is mandatory after all forms of the verb **быть** 'to be' (the future, the infinitive, the conditional, the gerund, the imperative), *except* the past tense (*see also page 49*):

Я бу́ду инженéром I will be an **engineer**

Он хóчет бы́ть врачóм He wants to be a **doctor**

Если бы я был худóжником, If I were an **artist** I would paint
я написáл бы её портрéт her **portrait**

Бúдучи учíтелем, он не богáт Being a **teacher**, he is not
wealthy

Хóчешь бы́ть поэтом? Будь поэтом! You want to be a **poet?**
Be a poet!

(b) After the *past tense* of **быть** ‘to be’, a distinction is made between the nominative case of a noun, which may denote *permanent status*:

По профéсии он был хíмик By profession he was a **chemist**
and the instrumental case, which may denote *temporary status*:

В то врéмя он был мáльчиком At that time he was a **boy**

(c) However, it is also quite normal now for the *instrumental* to denote permanent status as well:

Дíма был хорóшим человéком Dima was a **good man**
Она была сестрой моего дру́га She was my friend's **sister**

(d) If two nouns are linked by a form of the verb **быть**, the noun with the more general meaning appears in the instrumental, while that with the more specific meaning appears in the nominative:

Нáшей глáвной пробléмой был бюрократíзм Our main
problem was red tape

(e) The instrumental is also used with the verbs **рабóтать** ‘to work’, **служíть** ‘to serve’, etc.:

Он рабóтал мехáником He worked as a **mechanic**

Он служíл солдáтом He served as a **soldier**

and in constructions with an in-built meaning of time:

Он жил там подростком He lived there as (= when he was) an
adolescent

The instrumental case after other verbs

Other verbs that take the instrumental case include **окáзываться/оказáться** ‘to turn out to be’, **оставáться/остáться** ‘to remain’, **становíться/стать** ‘to become’, **считáться** ‘to be considered’, **чúвствовать себя** ‘to feel’, **являться/явíться** ‘to be’:

Он оказáлся лóжным дру́гом He turned out to be a **false friend**

Он остался жéртвой войны He remained a **victim** of the war

Он стал учíтелем He became a **teacher**

Она считáется гéнием She is considered to be a **genius**

Основным срéдством тráнспорта явли́яется поезд The **basic means** of transport is the train

Verb + accusative + instrumental case

The verbs **назначáть/назnáчить** ‘to appoint’, **назывáть/назвáть** ‘to name’, **считáть/счесть** ‘to consider’ take the accusative of a person or object and the instrumental of their name, function, or status:

Я считаю его хорóшим дру́гом I consider him a **good friend**

Они назвáли ребёнка Вáсей (or Вáся) They named the child **Vasya**

Его назnáчили дирéктором They appointed him **director**

Meanings of similarity and function

кéпка блинóм **flat cap** (lit. ‘like a pancake’)

Птица летíт стрелóй The bird flies **like an arrow**

Он вернúлся герóем He returned a **hero**

Он вырос слáвным пárнем He grew up to be a **fine young man**

For the prepositional/locative case, see pages 184–193.

The adjective

An adjective is a part of speech that describes a noun or pronoun. Most Russian adjectives have two forms: a **long form** (also known as the **attributive form**), that ends in two vowels and precedes the noun:

добрый человéк a kind man

and a **short form** (also known as the **predicative form**), the masculine of which ends in a consonant, the feminine, neuter, and plural in a vowel. The short form usually follows the subject:

Он добр к ней He is kind to her

Она добrá к нему She is kind to him

The long form declines in all six cases and **agrees** with the noun it qualifies in case, gender, and number. The short form has four forms only (masculine, feminine, and neuter singular, and plural), and does not decline.

I Long form of the adjective

Declension

There are four major categories of adjectival declension:

Hard declension: белый ‘white’, густой ‘thick’.

Soft declension: прежний ‘former’.

‘Mixed’ declension I. Adjectives in **-гий, -кий, -хий/-гóй, -кóй, -хóй**: длинный ‘long’, русский ‘Russian’, тихий ‘quiet’, дорогой ‘dear’, такой ‘such’, глухой ‘deaf’.

‘Mixed’ declension II. Adjectives in **-жий, -чий, -ший, -щий/-жóй, -шóй**: похожий ‘similar’, горячий ‘hot’, хороший ‘good’, общий ‘common’, чужой ‘alien’, большой ‘big’.

The endings of the ‘mixed’ declension are determined by the spelling rules (see page 6).

! Note: All long-form adjectives are subject to the animate accusative/genitive rule (see pages 9, 21).

Declension of the hard-ending adjective

Type 1: adjectives with the stress on the stem (белый 'white')

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	бел-ый	бел-ая	бел-ое	бел-ые
<i>Acc.</i>	бел-ый	бел-ую	бел-ое	бел-ые
<i>Gen.</i>	бел-ого	бел-ой	бел-ого	бел-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	бел-ому	бел-ой	бел-ому	бел-ым
<i>Instr.</i>	бел-ым	бел-ой	бел-ым	бел-ыми
<i>Prep.</i>	бел-ом	бел-ой	бел-ом	бел-ых

Most adjectives in Russian follow the same pattern as белый 'white'.

Type 2: adjectives with end stress (густой 'thick')

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	густ-ый	густ-ая	густ-ое	густ-ые
<i>Acc.</i>	густ-ый	густ-ую	густ-ое	густ-ые
<i>Gen.</i>	густ-ого	густ-ой	густ-ого	густ-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	густ-ому	густ-ой	густ-ому	густ-ым
<i>Instr.</i>	густ-ым	густ-ой	густ-ым	густ-ыми
<i>Prep.</i>	густ-ом	густ-ой	густ-ом	густ-ых

! Note: (a) A smaller number of adjectives follow the pattern of густой 'thick': больной 'sick', голубой 'light-blue', злой 'wicked', золотой 'golden', крутой 'steep', мировой 'world', молодой 'young', основной 'basic', пожилой 'elderly', простой 'simple', прямой 'direct', родной 'native' слепой 'blind', сырой 'damp', худой 'thin', and some others.
 (b) Their declension differs from that of stem-stressed белый 'white', apart from stress, only in the masculine nominative and accusative cases (-ый instead of -ый).

Declension of the soft-ending adjective

In the declension of the soft-ending adjective, the initial vowels of the hard endings (**ы**, **о**, **а**, **у**) are replaced by their soft equivalents (**и**, **е**, **я**, **ю**). **Прéжний** ‘former’:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	прéжн-ий	прéжн-яя	прéжн-ее	прéжн-ие
<i>Acc.</i>	прéжн-ий	прéжн-юю	прéжн-ее	прéжн-ие
<i>Gen.</i>	прéжн-его	прéжн-ей	прéжн-его	прéжн-их
<i>Dat.</i>	прéжн-ему	прéжн-ей	прéжн-ему	прéжн-им
<i>Instr.</i>	прéжн-им	прéжн-ей	прéжн-им	прéжн-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	прéжн-ем	прéжн-ей	прéжн-ем	прéжн-их

Apart from **карий** ‘hazel-coloured’, adjectives in this group have the suffix **-н-**; many express meanings of time or space. These can be divided into groups in accordance with meaning:

(a) *Seasons of the year:*

весéнний	spring	лéтний	summer
осéнний	autumn	зýмний	winter

Morning and evening:

утрeнний	morning
вечéрний	evening

Yesterday, today, tomorrow:

вчeрашний	yesterday's	сeгóдняшний	today's
зáвтрашний	tomorrow's		

(b) *Opposites in time and space:*

ранний	early	пóздний	late
недáвний	recent	дáвний	of long standing
ближníй	near	далýний	far
вéрхний	upper	нижníй	lower
внутренний	internal	внéшний	external
задníй	back	перéдний	front

(c) *Others:* **искренний** ‘sincere’, **крайний** ‘extreme’, **лишний** ‘superfluous’, **послéдний** ‘last’, **синий** ‘dark blue’, **срéдний** ‘middle’.

Mixed declension Type I: nouns in -гий, -кий, -хий/-гóй, -кóй, -хóй (рúсский ‘Russian’, плохóй ‘bad’)

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	рúсск-ий	рúсск-ая	рúсск-ое	рúсск-ие
<i>Acc.</i>	рúсск-ий	рúсск-ую	рúсск-ое	рúсск-ие
<i>Gen.</i>	рúсск-ого	рúсск-ой	рúсск-ого	рúсск-их
<i>Dat.</i>	рúсск-ому	рúсск-ой	рúсск-ому	рúсск-им
<i>Instr.</i>	рúсск-им	рúсск-ой	рúсск-им	рúсск-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	рúсск-ом	рúсск-ой	рúсск-ом	рúсск-их

The mixed nature of the endings is accounted for by the spelling rule which requires **ы** to be replaced by **и** after **г**, **к**, or **х**. This affects the masculine singular nominative, accusative, and instrumental, the neuter singular instrumental, and the whole of the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	плох-óй	плох-áя	плох-óе	плох-íе
<i>Acc.</i>	плох-óй	плох-úю	плох-óе	плох-íе
<i>Gen.</i>	плох-óго	плох-óй	плох-óго	плох-íх
<i>Dat.</i>	плох-óму	плох-óй	плох-óму	плох-íм
<i>Instr.</i>	плох-íм	плох-óй	плох-íм	плох-íми
<i>Prep.</i>	плох-óм	плох-óй	плох-óм	плох-íх

Note: (a) apart from stress, the declensions of **рúсский** and **плохóй** differ only in the masculine nominative and accusative singular.

(b) the spelling rule (**ы** is replaced by **и** after **г**, **к**, **х**) affects the masculine and neuter instrumental of **плохóй**, and the whole of the plural.

There are a limited number of adjectives in -гий (e.g. **дóлгий** ‘long’, **стрóгий** ‘strict’), -хий (e.g. **вéтхий** ‘ancient’, **тихий** ‘quiet’), -гóй (e.g. **дорогóй** ‘dear’, **другóй** ‘other’), and -хóй (e.g. **глухóй** ‘deaf’, **сухóй** ‘dry’). Suffix **-ск-** is very widely represented in adjectives of nationality (**испáнский** ‘Spanish’, **швéдский** ‘Swedish’, etc.), town and river names (**москóвский** ‘Moscow’, **донскóй** ‘of the Don’), names of humans (**мужскóй** ‘male’, **дéтский** ‘children’s’) and organizations (**парламентский** ‘parliamentary’).

Mixed declension Type 2: adjectives in -жий, -чий, -ший, -щий/-жóй, -шóй (горячий ‘hot’, большой ‘big’)

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	горяч-ий	горяч-ая	горяч-ее	горяч-ие
<i>Acc.</i>	горяч-ий	горяч-ую	горяч-ее	горяч-ие
<i>Gen.</i>	горяч-его	горяч-ей	горяч-его	горяч-их
<i>Dat.</i>	горяч-ему	горяч-ей	горяч-ему	горяч-им
<i>Instr.</i>	горяч-им	горяч-ей	горяч-им	горяч-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	горяч-ем	горяч-ей	горяч-ем	горяч-их

Likewise похóжий ‘similar’, прохóжий ‘passing’, свежий ‘fresh’, шипúчий ‘fizzy’, мláдший ‘junior’, стárший ‘senior’, хорóший ‘good’, блестя́щий ‘shining, brilliant’, бúдущий ‘future’, óбщий ‘common, general’, etc.

The mixed nature of the above endings is accounted for by the spelling rules: **и** (never **ы**) appears after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**. After **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, and **щ**, **о** can appear only in *stressed* position.

<i>Nom.</i>	больш-óй	больш-áя	больш-óе	больш-íе
<i>Acc.</i>	больш-óй	больш-úю	больш-óе	больш-íе
<i>Gen.</i>	больш-óго	больш-óй	больш-óго	больш-íх
<i>Dat.</i>	больш-óму	больш-óй	больш-óму	больш-íм
<i>Instr.</i>	больш-íм	больш-óй	больш-íм	больш-íми
<i>Prep.</i>	больш-óм	больш-óй	больш-óм	больш-íх

This time only one spelling rule applies: **и** (never **ы**) after **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, and **щ** (**о** can appear after **ш** because it is *stressed*).

Чужóй ‘alien, someone else’s’ and compounds of **большóй** ‘big’ (e.g. небольшóй ‘small’) are the only other commonly-used adjectives represented by this declension (there are *no* adjectives in -чóй or -шóй).

Uses of the long form of the adjective

(a) the long form of the adjective agrees with the noun in gender, number, and case. In attributive function, it usually precedes the noun:

	<i>Masculine singular</i>	<i>Feminine singular</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Реактивный самолёт летит The jet aircraft is flying	Бурная река течёт The turbulent river flows
<i>Acc.</i>	Я слышу громкий голос I hear a loud voice	Я читаю хорошую книгу I am reading a good book
<i>Gen.</i>	дом его младшего сына his younger son's house	Нет горячей воды There is no hot water
<i>Dat.</i>	Я звоню главному врачу I ring the senior doctor	Я помогаю бедной женщине I help the poor woman
<i>Instr.</i>	Я пишу красным карандашом I write with a red pencil	Я приехал ранней весной I arrived in early spring
<i>Prep.</i>	Я живу в большом городе I live in a large town	Я думаю о русской водке I think about Russian vodka

Plural: большие заводы ‘large factories’:

<i>Nom.</i>	больш-ие заво́ды
<i>Acc.</i>	больш-ие заво́ды
<i>Gen.</i>	больш-их заво́дов
<i>Dat.</i>	больш-им заво́дам
<i>Instr.</i>	больш-ими заво́дами
<i>Prep.</i>	больш-их заво́дах

(b) it may also follow the noun, if there are dependent words (e.g. от снёга in the following example), separated from the noun by a comma and with ‘who’ or ‘which’ understood. The rules of agreement apply:

Мы любуемся горами, белыми от снёга We admire the hills,
which are white with snow

(c) in predicative function, it follows immediately after the noun, as its predicate:

Ребёнок послушный The child is obedient

Утро свежее The morning is fresh

Ветер сильный The wind is strong

(d) in the past or future tenses the *instrumental* is preferred in written Russian when the verb ‘to be’ is involved:

Ребёнок был послушным The child was obedient

Кожа у неё была белой Her skin was white

Фотография будет успешной The photograph will be successful

! Note: The nominative is preferred in *colloquial* speech (for the short form of the adjective as a predicate, see pages 53–55).

(e) it is also used in the *instrumental* case after **казаться/по-** ‘to seem’ and some other verbs:

Браслёт казался недорогим The bracelet seemed inexpensive

Дверь оказалась запертой The door turned out to be locked

Чувство голода стало привычным The feeling of hunger became habitual

Школа считалась отличной The school was considered excellent

Это решение является окончательным This decision is final

(f) it also answers the questions ‘in what order?’, ‘in what state?’:

Он пришёл первым He arrived first

Она оставила книгу раскрытым She left the book open

Дай больному молоко горячим Give the invalid his milk hot

Additional comments on the long form of the adjective

(a) Consonant change in adjectival formation

The letters **г**, **к**, **х**, **ц**, and **л** change, respectively, to **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **ч**, and **ль** before suffix **-н-** in adjectives derived from nouns:

г-ж дорóга 'road' **дорóжный** знак road sign

к-ч востóк 'east' **востóчная** гранíца eastern border

х-ш вóздух 'air' **воздúшный** шар balloon

ц-ч úлица 'street' **úличный** фонарь street lamp

л-ль футбóл 'football' **футбóльное** поле football pitch

(b) Special types of adjective

Type мáмин 'Mum's', **отцóв** 'Dad's', and a number of others derived from the names of family members and some others.

Type -енький. Denotes smallness (e.g. **мáленький** 'small'), sometimes with an emotive nuance (e.g. **свéженъкий**, from **свéжий** 'fresh').

Type -оватый/-еватый '-ish' (denoting a small degree of some quality): **сладковáтый** 'sweetish', **синевáтый** 'bluish'.

Type -ивый. Denotes inclination or characteristic: **лжíвый** 'deceitful, lying', **задумчивый** 'pensive'.

Type -истый. Denotes abundance: **каменистый** 'stony'.

(c) Adjectival nouns

- (i) Some words have the form of an adjective but the meaning of a noun (rather like the 'reds' in English, of a football team, or 'the good, the bad, and the ugly'). In many cases, an absent noun is 'understood'.

(ii) Animate adjectives distinguish gender: **рабочий**, **рабочая** 'worker', **служащий**, **служащая** 'white-collar worker' (however, **часовой** 'sentry' and **учёный** 'academic' are masculine only). Inanimate nouns take their gender and number from the noun which is implied:

кривая (лінія 'line' understood) 'curve'
столовая (кімната 'room' understood) 'dining room'
животное (существо 'being' understood) 'animal'
мороженое (блідо 'dish' understood) 'ice-cream'
будущее (врэмя 'time' understood) 'the future'
 чаевые (деньги 'money' understood) 'a tip'

! Note: also **главное** 'the main thing', **самое важное** 'the most important thing'.

(iii) Many of the adjectival nouns continue to function as adjectives: **столовая ложка** 'table spoon', **выходной** or **выходной день** 'day off'.

(iv) All decline like adjectives: Нет **мороженого** 'There is no ice-cream'.

(v) the animate-accusative = genitive rule applies to animate masculine adjectival nouns in the singular (**Я вижу рабочего** 'I see the worker') and all animate adjectival nouns in the plural (**Я вижу рабочих** 'I see the workers', **Я кормлю животных** 'I feed the animals').

(d) Loan adjectives of the type **беж** 'beige'

Some of these adjectives relate to fashion, others to food and other topics. They are indeclinable and usually follow the noun:

юбка мини mini skirt
картофель фри chips, French **fries**
часы пик rush hour
вес брутто gross weight

I The short form of the adjective

Formation

(a) The short form of an adjective is made by removing the whole of the masculine long-form ending and the final vowels of the feminine, neuter, and plural: *Long form* борáтый 'rich', *Short forms* борáт (masculine), борáта (feminine), борáто (neuter), борáты (plural).

(b) Stress may be fixed, as in the above, or mobile, with a tendency to stem stress in the masculine, neuter, and plural, and end stress in the feminine:

<i>Long form</i>	<i>Short form</i>
молодóй 'young':	мólод, моловá, молово, моловы
дóбрый 'kind':	добр, добра, дóбро, дóбрý

The fleeting vowel

(a) A fleeting vowel, usually -e-, appears between two consonants or replaces -и- in many *masculine* short forms:

бéдный 'poor': бéден, беднá, бéдно, бéдны

спокóйный 'calm': спокóен, спокóйна, спокóйно, спокóйны

(b) The fleeting vowel -o- is used:

(i) before к or г:

блíзкий 'close': блíзок, близкá, блíзко, блíзки

долгий 'long' долог, долгá, долго, долги

! Note: -e- is used instead of -o- after ж, ч, ш: тýжek from тýжкий 'severe'.

(ii) in пóлон (from пóлный 'full'), зол (from злой 'evil'), and смешóн (from смешnóй 'funny')

(c) A few short-form masculine adjectives have fleeting vowel -ë-: умён from ýмный 'clever', хитёp from хítрый 'cunning', силён from сильный 'strong'.

Irregular short forms

<i>Long form</i>	<i>Short forms</i>
большо́й 'big':	велик, велика, велико, велики
мáленький 'small':	мал, малá, малó, малы
достóйный 'worthy':	достóин, достóйна, достóйно, достóйны

Functions of the short form of the adjective

(a) The short form of the adjective appears only in predicative position, i.e. it usually follows the noun and is linked to it by a form of the verb 'to be'. In cases where long and short forms are synonymous, either can be used in predicative position:

Природа там прекрасная/прекрасна The scenery there is wonderful

(b) The long and short forms of some adjectives differ in meaning and are not interchangeable:

Этот старик плохой This old man is wicked

Старик совсéм плох The old man is pretty poorly

Она хорошая She is good

Она хороша собой She is good-looking

(c) In the case of some short forms, a distinction is made between *temporary state* (short form) and *permanent state* (long form):

Он болен/Она больна He/She is ill

Он больной/Она больная He/She is chronically ill

Short-form adjectives commonly used to denote a temporary state or relating to particular circumstances:

Он гóлоден	He is hungry	Она голодна	She is hungry
Он готóв	He is ready	Она готова	She is ready
Он довóлен	He is pleased	Она довольна	She is pleased
Он жив	He is alive	Она живá	She is alive
Он занят	He is busy	Она занятá	She is busy
Он здорóв	He is healthy	Она здорова	She is healthy
Он непráв	He is wrong	Она неправá	She is wrong
Он несчáстен	He is unhappy	Она несчастна	She is unhappy
Он прав	He is right	Она правá	She is right
Он счáстлив	He is happy	Она счастлива	She is happy
Он сыт	He is full	Она сытá	She is full
Он увéрен	He is sure	Она увéрена	She is sure

Delimitation of meaning

- (a) The short form is *mandatory* in predicative position when the adjective and noun identify with each other only in certain aspects. For example, ‘This country is rich’ can be rendered as **Эта страна богатая** (long form) or **Эта страна богата** (short form), but the short form is *compulsory* in rendering ‘This country is rich *in oil*’ (**Эта страна богата нефтью**), since ‘rich’ is limited to *one* area only: oil.
- (b) Likewise, ‘The child is obedient’ can be rendered as **Ребёнок послушный** (long form) or **Ребёнок послушен** (short form), but if, for example, the dative of родители ‘parents’ is added, the short form *must* be used: **Ребёнок послушен родителям** ‘The child is obedient to its parents’ (because the meaning is delimited by родителям).

- (c) Delimitation (i.e., restriction to a particular context) can be effected in the following ways:

(i) By a noun in an oblique case

Корзина полна ягод The basket is full of berries

Речь достойна внимания The speech is worthy of attention

Она верна своему мужу She is faithful to her husband

Край беден реками The area is poor in rivers.

(ii) By a prepositional phrase

Он равнодушен к музыке He is indifferent to music

Она добра по природе She is kind by nature

Билет действителен по май The ticket is valid up to and including May

Он глух на правое ухо He is deaf in the right ear

Пестициды вредны для жуков Pesticides are harmful to beetles

(iii) By a clause or infinitive

Я согласен, что надо действовать I agree we must act

Я готов помочь I am ready to help

Он слишком молод, чтобы помнить войну He is too young to remember the war

Adjectives (long and short) following the noun

A distinction must be made between a ‘delimited’ short adjective in predicative position (following the noun and linked to it by the verb ‘to be’):

Он равнодушен к музыке He is **indifferent** to music

and a long adjective that also follows the noun but is separated from it by a comma and agrees with it in case, gender, and number, with ‘who is’, ‘which is’ etc. understood:

Я встретил человéка, равнодушного к музыке I met a man
(who was) **indifferent** to music

The short form of adjectives of dimension

While the long forms of adjectives of dimension imply complete identity with the nouns they qualify: **Дом большой/маленький** ‘The house is big/small’ (i.e. by normal standards), the short form relates the dimension to particular circumstances: **Дом велик** ‘The house is too big’ (e.g. for a small family), **Дом мал** ‘The house (possibly the *same* house) is too small’ (e.g. for a large family). The construction is often used with clothing:

Брюки узкí The trousers are **too tight**

Юбка длиннá The skirt is **too long**

Костюм свободен The suit is **too loose**

Рукава короткí The sleeves are **too short**

Adjectives that have no short forms

- (a) adjectives in **-ск-** (e.g. **физíческий** ‘physical’)
- (b) adjectives of time (e.g. **лётний** ‘summer’) and place (e.g. **задний** ‘back’)
- (c) adjectives that denote materials/substances (e.g. **стальнóй** ‘steel’)
- (d) ‘animal’ adjectives of the type **вóлчий** ‘wolf’s’



Note: **рад** ‘is glad’ has no *long* form.

The comparative degree

- (a) Most Russian adjectives have *two* comparatives.
- (b) One comparative (the ‘long’ form) combines **более** ‘more’ with the long adjective, normally precedes the noun, and defines and describes it: **более широкая площадь** ‘a broader square’. (**Менее** ‘less’ is used in reverse comparisons: **менее серьёзный кризис** ‘a less serious crisis’.)
- (c) The other (‘short’) comparative is a one-word form in **-ее** (colloquially **-ей**) or **-е** that follows the noun and is linked to it by a form of the verb ‘to be’: **Это кресло удобнее** ‘This armchair is more comfortable’.

The long form of the comparative adjective

- (a) Almost every Russian adjective makes its long-form comparative with **более + positive adjective**:

счастливый человек a **happy man**

более счастливый человек a **happier man**

трудная задача a **difficult task**

более трудная задача a **more difficult task**

- (b) **Более** is invariable, but adjective and noun agree in gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter), number (singular or plural), and in case:

Masculine:	более важный вопрос	a more important question
Feminine:	более богатая женщина	a richer woman
Neuter:	более длинное письмо	a longer letter
Plural:	более чистые пляжи	cleaner beaches

One-word long comparatives

- (a) Three pairs of opposites have one-word long comparatives (более plays no part in their formation):

старший elder, senior	младший younger, junior
больший bigger	меньший smaller
лучший better	худший worse

(b) **Старший** is used mainly of people: старший брат/класс/лейтенант/старшее поколение ‘elder brother/senior class/senior lieutenant/older generation’, as is its opposite, **младший**. Like **лучший** ‘better, best’ and **худший** ‘worse, worst’ they can also function as superlatives. For objects, **более старый** is used: Он купил более старую машину ‘He bought an older car’.

(c) A fourth pair, **высший** ‘higher’, **низший** ‘lower’ have some non-comparative functions: **высшая математика** ‘higher mathematics’, **высшее учёбное заведение** ‘higher teaching establishment’ (cf. *superlative* usage in **в высшей степени** ‘to the highest degree’, **низшее звание** ‘lowest rank’).

The short form comparative in -е (colloquially -ей)

- (a) The short (predicative) form of most comparatives is made by adding **-е** to the stem of the adjective. The short form does not decline and is the same for all genders and the plural:

Доклад интереснее The report is more interesting
 Лекция интереснее The lecture is more interesting
 Это слово интереснее This word is more interesting
 Факты интереснее The facts are more interesting

- (b) Adjectives with monosyllabic stems add stressed **-е** to the stem:

Этот вопрос важнее This question is more important
 Эта улица длиннее This street is longer
 Эта книга нужнее This book is more necessary
 Этот мальчик умнее This boy is cleverer
 Боксёр сильнее The boxer is stronger

One or two adjectives with stems of more than one syllable also do this:

Этот чемодан тяжелее This suitcase is heavier

Short-form comparatives in -е, with consonant change

The following consonant changes occur in the formation of short-form comparatives:

В-ВЛ, Г-Ж, Д-Ж, З-Ж, К-Ч, С-Ш, СТ-Ш, Т-Ч

Short forms of this type end in a single unstressed -е.

Sometimes **к** is by-passed and the preceding consonant changed (e.g. **бліжe** ‘is closer’, from **блізкий** ‘close’, with **з** changing to **ж** and **к** omitted):

<i>Long form</i>	<i>Short form</i>	
блізкий ‘close’	Рекá ближе	The river is closer
богатýй ‘rich’	Человéк богáче	The man is richer
высóкий ‘high’	Горá выше	The mountain is higher
глáдкий ‘smooth’	Озеро гляже	The lake is smoother
громкýй ‘loud’	Мотóр грómче	The engine is louder
густóй ‘thick’	Лес гúшe	The forest is thicker
дешёвый ‘cheap’	Билéты дешéвле	The tickets are cheaper
дорогóй ‘dear’	Бензíн дорóже	Petrol is dearer
жíдкий ‘thin, weak’	Чай жíже	The tea is weaker
корóткий ‘short’	Рукавá корóче	The sleeves are shorter
крепкýй ‘strong’	Чай крéпче	The tea is stronger
крутóй ‘steep’	Холм крúче	The hill is steeper
лёгкий ‘easy, light’	Задáча лéгче	The task is easier
мéлкий ‘shallow’	Рекá мéльче	The river is shallower
молодóй ‘young’	Врач молóже	The doctor is younger
мягкýй ‘soft’	Подúшка мягче	The cushion is softer
ни́зкий ‘low’	Цéны нижe	Prices are lower
простóй ‘simple’	Урóк прóще	The lesson is simpler
стрóгий ‘strict’	Учитель стрóже	The teacher is stricter
твёрдый ‘hard, firm’	Его шаг твёрже	His step is firmer
тихýй ‘quiet’	Вéчер ти́ше	The evening is quieter
толстýй ‘thick’	Том тóлще	The volume is thicker
тугóй ‘tight’	Струна тúже	The string is tighter
у́зкий ‘narrow’	Тоннель у́же	The tunnel is narrower
чистýй ‘clean’	Посúда чище	The crockery is cleaner

Other short forms

There are a few other short forms that undergo consonant change (see preceding page), e.g. *rézche* from *rézkiy* ‘sharp’.

Some very common forms in -e do not conform to the standard consonant changes:

большо́й ‘big’	Дом бо́льше	The house is bigger
глубо́кий ‘deep’	О́зеро глубо́же	The lake is deeper
мáленький ‘small’	Кóмната мéньше	The room is smaller
плохо́й ‘bad’	Ра́бота хúже	The work is worse
слáдкий ‘sweet’	Пирóг слáще	The pie is sweeter
стáрый ‘old’	Моря́к стáрше	The sailor is older
тóнкий ‘thin’	Тáлия тóньше	The waist is thinner
хоро́ший ‘good’	Гóлос лúчше	The voice is better
широ́кий ‘broad’	Улица шире	The street is broader

Note (a) *стáрше* ‘is older’ is used of people, *старее* of objects.

(b) some adjectives have irregular one-word long-form comparatives and irregular short forms:

<i>One-word comparatives</i>		<i>Short forms</i>
большо́й ‘big’	бо́льши́й ‘bigger’	бо́льше ‘is bigger’
мáленький ‘small’	мéньши́й ‘smaller’	мéньше ‘is smaller’
плохо́й ‘bad’	хúдши́й ‘worse’	хúже ‘is worse’
хоро́ший ‘good’	лúчши́й ‘better’	лúчше ‘is better’
стáрый ‘old’	стáрши́й ‘older’	стáрше ‘is older’

(c) *молодо́й ‘young’* has long-form comparative *млáдши́й ‘younger’*, short-form comparative *молóже ‘is younger’*.

Adjectives in **-ский**

Adjectives in **-ский** (e.g. *трагíческий ‘tragic’*) have no comparative short forms, but, in common with some other adjectives which have no short forms, they either use a synonym, or the long form, or a version that *does* have a short form (e.g. *трагíчный ‘tragic’* with the comparative short form *трагíчнее ‘is/are more tragic’*).

Constructions with the comparative degree

(a) Standard comparison: nominative + **short-form** comparative + *genitive*:

Он моложе меня He is **younger** than me

Пиво дешевле вина Beer is **cheaper** than wine

! Note: An alternative short-form construction with **чем** (Он моложе, чем я) is less commonly used, though with a **long-form** comparative it is the *norm*: Он живёт в **большем** доме, чем мы 'He lives in a **bigger** house than we do', as it is when the second item for comparison is one of the possessive pronouns **его** 'his', **её** 'her', or **их** 'their': Моя машина новее, чем **его** 'My car is newer than his'.

(b) A difference (in measurement, age, etc.) between two items for comparison is expressed by **на** + accusative case:

Она на три года старше меня She is **three years** older than me

Он на два сантиметра выше отца He is **two centimetres** taller than father

! Note: The instrumental (тремя годами etc.) is a rarer alternative to **на** + accusative.

(c) **В** + a form of **раз** 'time' is used to render a difference in terms of a multiple ('twice as big' etc.):

Он в два раза (вдвое) богаче сына He is **twice as rich** as his son

(d) 'The ... the ...' is rendered as **Чем ..., тем ...:**

Чем ниже цены на топливо, **тем лучше** The lower fuel prices are, the better

(e) 'Much' + comparative is rendered by **намного** (намного лучше 'much better'), **гораздо** (гораздо выше 'much taller'), **много** (много дешевле 'much cheaper'), **ог куда** (куда интереснее 'much more interesting'), and 'even, still' + comparative by **ещё**: **ещё лучше** 'even better'.

The superlative degree

(a) The standard method of forming the superlative of an adjective is to precede a noun phrase (long adjective + noun) by **самый/самая/самое/самые**:

<i>Masculine</i>	самый острый нож	the sharpest knife
<i>Feminine</i>	самая богатая страна	the richest country
<i>Neuter</i>	самое вкусное блюдо	the tastiest dish
<i>Plural</i>	самые известные писатели	the most famous writers

(b) **Самый** declines and agrees with nouns and adjectives in gender, number, and case:

	<i>Masculine Singular</i>	<i>Feminine Singular</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	сам-ый острый нож	сам-ая богатая страна
<i>Acc.</i>	сам-ый острый нож	сам-ую богатую страну
<i>Gen.</i>	сам-ого острого ножа	сам-ой богатой страны
<i>Dat.</i>	сам-ому острому ножу	сам-ой богатой стране
<i>Instr.</i>	сам-ым острым ножом	сам-ой богатой страной
<i>Prep.</i>	сам-ом остром ноже	сам-ой богатой стране

Note: Neuter forms decline like masculine, except in the nominative/accusative (neuter **самое вкусное блюдо**).

	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	сам-ые острые ножи
<i>Acc.</i>	сам-ые острые ножи
<i>Gen.</i>	сам-ых острых ножей
<i>Dat.</i>	сам-ым острым ножам
<i>Instr.</i>	сам-ыми острыми ножами
<i>Prep.</i>	сам-ых острых ножах

Other forms of the superlative

Some one-word irregular comparatives can also be used as superlatives: **лúчши́й** ‘better, best’ (лúчши́й курóрт ‘the best spa’), **хúдши́й** ‘worse, worst’, **стáрши́й** ‘older, oldest’, **млáдши́й** ‘younger, youngest’, see page 57. (Sometimes they combine with **сáмый**: **сáмая лúчшая бумáра** ‘the very best paper’.)

The predicative superlative

(a) **Сáмый** is also used in forming a predicative superlative:

Этот дом **сáмый мáленький** This house **is the smallest**

Эта задáча **сáмая лёгкая** This task **is the easiest**

(b) Another way of expressing a predicative superlative is to combine a short-form predicative comparative (e.g. **умнéе** ‘cleverer’, **серъёзнее** ‘more serious’) with **всех** (genitive of **все** ‘all, everyone’) or **всегó** (genitive of **всё** ‘all, everything’):

Эта дéвочка **умнéе всех** This girl **is the cleverest**

Эта пробléма **серъёзнее всегó** This problem **is the most serious**

Superlatives in -ейши́й/-айши́й, наи- and наибóлее

(a) A limited range of forms in **-ейши́й**, based mainly on monosyllabic roots, can either have superlative meaning (**сильнéйши́й** человéк ‘the strongest man’) or denote an extreme manifestation (**сложнéйши́я** задáча ‘a **most complex** task’, **чистéйши́й** вздор ‘the **most arrant** nonsense’). Forms derived from adjectives with roots in **г, к, х** undergo consonant change to **ж, ч, ш** and take **-айши́й** (**кратчайши́й** ‘shortest’ from ‘short’, note also **з-ж** in **ближáйши́й** ‘nearest’: **ближáйши́я** больни́ца ‘the nearest hospital’).

(b) Indeclinable **наибóлее** is somewhat official and normally combines with adjectives with roots of more than one syllable: **наибóлее логíчное решéние** ‘the **most logical** solution’.

Declinable one-word superlatives in **наи-** are formal: **наилúчши́й** сорт ‘the **very best** brand’, **наибóльши́я** эффективность ‘**maximum** effectiveness’.

Note: For **вы́сши́й** ‘highest’, see page 57.

The pronoun

Pronouns are words that substitute for nouns or noun phrases. They sub-divide into:

- (a) *Personal pronouns* (я 'I', ты 'you' (singular, familiar), он 'he, it', она 'she, it', оно 'it', мы 'we', вы 'you' (plural, formal), они 'they').
- (b) *The reflexive pronoun* *себя*.
- (c) *Demonstrative pronouns* (этот 'this', тот 'that').
- (d) *Possessive pronouns* (pronominal adjectives) (мой 'my, mine, твой 'your, yours' (familiar), его 'his, its', её 'her, hers, its', наш 'our, ours', ваш 'your, yours', их 'their, theirs').
- (e) *The reflexive possessive pronoun* *свой*.
- (f) *Interrogative and relative pronouns* (кто 'who', что 'what', какой 'which', который 'who, which', чей 'whose').
- (g) *Indefinite pronouns* (кто-то 'someone', кто-нибудь 'anyone', что-то 'something', что-нибудь 'anything', etc.).
- (h) *Quantifying pronouns* (весь 'all' etc.).
- (i) *Emphatic pronouns* (сам 'oneself', самый 'the very').
- (j) *Negative pronouns* (никто, ничто, никакой, ничей, некого, нечего).

I Personal pronouns

The personal pronouns decline as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Prep.</i>
я	мен-́я	мен-́я	мн-е	мн-о́й	мн-е
ты	теб-́я	теб-́я	теб-́е	тоб-́о́й	теб-́е
он	егó	егó	ем-́у	им	нём
она́	её	её	ей	ей	ней
оно́	егó	егó	ем-́у	им	нём
мы	н-ас	н-ас	н-ам	н-áми	н-ас
вы	в-ас	в-ас	в-ам	в-áми	в-ас
они́	их	их	им	íми	них

Functions and features of the personal pronouns я, ты, он, она, оно

(a) Я takes first-person singular forms of a verb:

Я читаю и пишу I read and write

It is of common gender, used for either male or female speakers:

Я рад I am glad **Я работал** I worked (masc.)

Я рада I am glad **Я работала** I worked (fem.)

(b) Ты takes second-person singular forms of a verb:

Ты знаешь этого человека? Do you know this person?

It is used in addressing relatives, close friends and colleagues, children, subordinates, animals, etc. Like я, it is of common gender:

Ты согласен? Do you agree? **Ты опоздал** You are late (masc.)

Ты согласна? Do you agree? **Ты опоздала** You are late (fem.)

The pronoun **ты** is usually omitted when the second-person singular verb is used in the impersonal meaning 'one':

Не знаешь, что делать One doesn't know what to do

(c) Он/Она relate, respectively, to masculine and feminine nouns (animate or inanimate):

Он играл в футбол He played football

Она больная She is ill

Это наш дом. Он новый This is our house. It is new

Где ложка? Она в ящике Where is the spoon? It is in the drawer

(d) Оно relates to neuter nouns:

Белое море? Оно на севере The White Sea? It is in the north

! Note: The oblique cases of он она оно take initial н- after a preposition: от него 'from him', к нему 'to him', с ним 'with him'; до неё 'before her', к ней 'to her', передней 'before her' etc. (see also page 65).

Functions and features of the personal pronouns **мы**, **вы**, **они**

(a) **Мы** combines with first-person plural forms of verbs and the plural of past-tense forms and short adjectives:

Мы аплоди́руем We **applaud**

Мы зна́ли We **knew**

Мы гото́вы We **are ready**

(b) **Вы** can refer to one person (if used in polite speech) or more than one, combining with the second-person plural of verbs, the plural past tense and plural short adjectives:

Вы игра́ете в тénнис? Do you **play tennis?**

Вы пообéдали? Have you **dined?**

Вы довóльны? Are you **pleased?**

When **вы** combines with the *long* form of an adjective, **такóй** or **одíн**, a distinction is made between singular and plural:

Кто вы такóй/такáя? Who **are you?** (male/female singular)

Кто вы такíе? Who **are you?** (plural)

Вы одíй/однá? Are you **alone?** (male/female singular)

Вы одní? Are you **alone?** (plural)

Вы смéлы́й/смéлая You are **daring** (male/female singular)

Вы смéлы́е You are **daring** (plural)

! Note: When used as a polite form (e.g., in letters), **Вы** is capitalized for one addressee (but uncapitalized for a number of addressees).

(c) **Онí** combines with third-person plural forms of verbs and short adjectives:

Онí помога́ют/отдыхáли/голодны They **help/relaxed/are hungry**

The oblique cases of **онí** take initial **и-** when governed by a preposition: **средí них** ‘among them’, **к ним** ‘towards them’, **мéжду нýми** ‘between them’.

Онí is omitted in general statements, when no named individuals are indicated:

Здесь стрóят мост They **are building** a bridge here

! Note: pronouns pair with nouns or other pronouns, using the preposition **с + instrumental case:**

онí с отцóм he/she/they **and father**

мы с вáми you **and I**

мы с ним he **and I**

The reflexive pronoun **себя**

The reflexive pronoun declines as follows:

Nom. *non-existent*

Acc. **себ-́й**

Gen. **себ-́я**

Dat. **себ-́е**

Instr. **соб-́ой**

Prep. **себ-́е**

(a) **Себя** refers back to the subject of the clause (i.e. the subject and **себя** denote the same person), rendering English ‘myself’, ‘himself’, ‘herself’, ‘ourselves’, ‘yourself/yourselves’, ‘themselves’. No distinction is made in respect of person or number:

Я знаю себя I know **myself**

Ты знаешь себя You know **yourself**

Он/Она знает себя He/She knows **himself/herself**

Мы знаем себя We know **ourselves**

Вы знаете себя You know **yourself/yourselves**

Они знают себя They know **themselves**

(b) The pronoun is more versatile than the reflexive verb ending **-ся/-сь** (see page 137), since it can express the indirect object in the dative, combine with prepositions, and render other relationships:

Она сшила себе платье She made **herself** a dress

Он привлек к себе внимание He drew attention to **himself**

Они разговаривали между собой They conversed among **themselves**

Он доволен собой He is pleased with **himself**

(c) Particular care must be taken not to be misled by English use of a personal pronoun when Russian requires the *reflexive* pronoun:

Он взял меня с собой He took me **with him**

Я посадил её рядом с собой I sat her **next to me**

Закрой дверь за собой Close the door **behind you**

(d) Do not confuse **себя** with the *emphatic* pronoun **сам** ‘oneself’ (see page 77).

The demonstrative pronoun **этот** 'this'

- (a) Demonstrative pronouns indicate the person or thing referred to.
- (b) **Этот** 'this' declines as follows, with soft endings in the masculine and neuter singular instrumental and the whole of the plural:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	этот	эт-а	эт-о	эт-и
<i>Acc.</i>	этот	эт-у	эт-о	эт-и
<i>Gen.</i>	эт-ого	эт-ой	эт-ого	эт-их
<i>Dat.</i>	эт-ому	эт-ой	эт-ому	эт-им
<i>Instr.</i>	эт-им	эт-ой	эт-им	эт-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	этом	эт-ой	эт-ом	эт-их

- (c) The declined forms must not be confused with **это** 'this is, these are':

этот завод	this factory	Это завод	This is a factory
эта марка	this stamp	Это марка	This is a stamp
это молоко	this milk	Это молоко	This is milk
эти реки	these rivers	Это реки	These are rivers

- (d) Note the idioms:

Всё дёло в **этом** **That** is just the point

Что вы хотите **этим** сказать? What do you mean by **that**?

- (e) **Этот** is used to distinguish something close at hand from something further away (rendered by **тот** 'that', see page 68):

Он живёт в **этом** или в **том** доме? Does he live in **this** house or **that one**?

- (f) **Этот** **самый** means 'this very':

Нам нужна **эта самая** карта We need **this very** map

- (g) The animate-accusative rule applies:

Вы знаете **этого человека**?/этих людей? Do you know **this person**/**these people**?

The demonstrative pronoun **тот** 'that'

(a) **Тот** declines as follows, with soft endings in the masculine and neuter singular instrumental and the whole of the plural:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	тот	т-а	т-о	т-е
<i>Acc.</i>	тот	т-у	т-о	т-е
<i>Gen.</i>	т-огó	т-ой	т-огó	т-ех
<i>Dat.</i>	т-ому́	т-ой	т-ому́	т-ем
<i>Instr.</i>	т-ем	т-ой	т-ем	т-éми
<i>Prep.</i>	т-ом	т-ой	т-ом	т-ех

(b) It denotes spatial distancing:

Онý жíли по ту стóрону рекý They lived on **that** side of the river

or temporal distancing:

В тот день бýло хóлодно It was cold **that** day

(c) It can also mean 'he, she, the latter', resolving ambiguity:

Вáня обратíлся к Кóле, но тот не отреагíровал Vanya addressed Kolya, but **he** (Kolya) didn't react

(d) **Кто** is used as a relative pronoun to **тот** and **те**:

Тот, кто знал, отвéтил The one who knew answered

(but Та, которая знала, отвéтила She who knew answered)

Я поблагодарíл тех, кто помóг I thanked **those** who helped

(e) **Что** is used as a relative pronoun to **то**:

Я был удивлён тем, что он сказáл I was surprised by what he said

! Note: тот же (сáмый) 'the same', не тот 'the wrong', ни тот ни друgóй 'neither':

Онý сéли в тот же сáмый вагóн They got into the **same** carriage

Он набрáл не тот нóмер He dialled the **wrong** number

Ни тот ни друgóй не знал Neither of them knew

Clauses linked by то, что 'what' (= that which)

То, что он сказал, рассердило меня **What (that which) he said angered me.**

Note:

(a) The construction with **то, что** is especially common where a verb or adjective governs an oblique case or prepositional phrase:
Зависеть от + genitive

Это зависит от того, что вы имеете в виду **It depends what you have in mind**

Верить + dative

Я верю тому, что он сказал **I believe what he said**

(b) The construction may be equivalent to English preposition + -ing:

Благодарен за + accusative

Я благодарен ей за то, что она мне помогла **I am grateful to her for helping me**

Гордиться + instrumental

Он гордится тем, что он её отец **He is proud of being her father**

Чтобы + past tense

When intention or purpose is expressed rather than fact, **чтобы** + past tense is used instead of **что** (see pages 135–136):

Добиваться + genitive

Он добивался того, чтобы она подписала контракт **He tried to get her to sign the contract**

Compare **то, что**, denoting a fact:

Он добился того, что она подписала контракт **He got her to sign the contract**

The possessive pronouns **мой**, **твой**, **наш**, **ваш**

(a) The possessive pronoun **мой** 'my, mine' declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	мо́й	мо́й	мо́й	мо́и
<i>Acc.</i>	мо́й	мо́ю	мо́й	мо́и
<i>Gen.</i>	мо́его	мо́ей	мо́его	мо́их
<i>Dat.</i>	мо́ему	мо́ей	мо́ему	мо́им
<i>Instr.</i>	мо́им	мо́ей	мо́им	мо́ими
<i>Prep.</i>	мо́ем	мо́ей	мо́ем	мо́их

Note: **Твой** declines like **мой**.

(b) The possessive pronoun **наш** 'our, ours' declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	наш	наш-а	наш-е	наш-и
<i>Acc.</i>	наш	наш-у	наш-е	наш-и
<i>Gen.</i>	наш-его	наш-ей	наш-его	наш-их
<i>Dat.</i>	наш-ему	наш-ей	наш-ему	наш-им
<i>Instr.</i>	наш-им	наш-ей	наш-им	наш-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	наш-ем	наш-ей	наш-ем	наш-их

(c) The possessive pronoun **ваш** declines like **наш**. It is spelt **Ваш** in polite contexts (e.g., letters, but **ваш** if addressed to more than one person).

(d) All the possessive pronouns observe the animate accusative = genitive rule in the masculine singular and the whole of the plural:

Он знаёт моего брата, твоего отца, нашего дядю, ваших племянников и племянниц He knows my brother, your father, our uncle, your nephews and nieces

(e) The pronouns are used both adjectivally (e.g. **моя** карта 'my map') and pronominally (e.g. **Эта** карта — **моя** 'This map is mine').

The third-person possessive pronouns **еро** 'his, its', **её** 'her, its', **их** 'their'

(a) The third person possessive pronouns **еро**, **её**, and **их** are indeclinable and invariable, whatever the gender, number, or case of the noun they refer to:

еро отéц, **еро** мать, **еро** дру́зья his father, his mother, his friends

её брат, **её** сестра, **её** письмо her brother, her sister, her letter
их дом, **их** кóмната, **их** дéти their house, their room, their children

Я интересу́юсь **еро** картина́ми I am interested in his paintings

Я вéрю **её** сестре I believe her sister

Она вы́шла зáмуж за **их** бráта She married their brother

(b) **Его**, **её**, and **их** also refer to objects:

Наш дом стáрый. **Его** истóрия ухóдит в прóшлый век Our house is old. Its history goes back to last century

Пráга - столица Чéхии. **Её** населéние бы́стро растёт Prague is the capital of the Czech Republic. Its population is growing fast

Я смотрó на дерéвья. **Их** лíстья опадáют I look at the trees. Their leaves are falling

Note: The initial **и-** that precedes personal pronouns **еро**, **её**, and **их** in the meaning, respectively, 'him', 'her', and 'them' when governed by prepositions (see page 64), **never** precedes the possessive pronouns **еро** 'his', **её** 'her', and **их** 'their', thus:

Personal pronouns Possessive pronouns

от **неро** from him but от **еро** дру́га from his friend

для **неё** for her but для **её** дóчери for her daughter

с **ними** with them but с **их** сестрóй with their sister

(c) The pronouns are also used pronominally (e.g. Э́тот дом – **её** 'This house is hers').

The reflexive possessive pronoun **свой**

(a) **Свой** declines like **мой** and **твой** and refers back to subjects (nouns or pronouns) of any gender or either number:

Он потерял **своё** книгу He has lost **his** book

Она потеряла **своё** книгу She has lost **her** book

Они потеряли **свой** книги They have lost **their** books

(b) When there is a **third-person** subject, it is *essential* to differentiate between **свой** and **его** 'his', **её** 'her', **их** 'their', otherwise the wrong meaning will be conveyed (Он забыл **свой** номер телефона means 'He has forgotten **his** (own) telephone number', while 'Он забыл **его** номер телефона' means 'He has forgotten **his** (someone else's) telephone number').

(c) The possessive pronouns **его**, **её**, and **их** (*not* **свой**) may constitute part of a multiple subject:

Мой брат и **его** друг обедают My brother and **his** friend are having lunch

(d) They may also refer to the subject of a new clause:

Она сказала, что **её** брат болен She said **her** brother was ill

(e) With **first-person** or **second-person** subjects (**я**, **ты**, **мы**, or **вы**), **мой**, **твой**, **наш**, and **ваш** can be used, but **свой** is *preferred*:

Я показал **свой** (мой) паспорт I showed **my** passport

Мы красили **свой** (наш) дом We were painting **our** house

Вы нашли **своё** (вашу) сумку? Have you found **your** bag?

(f) In references to parts of the body, possessive pronouns are usually omitted altogether:

Он вытирает руки He is drying **his** hands

Я порезал палец I cut **my** finger

Note: **свой**, **свой**, **своё**, **свой** are used to denote possession ('my own', 'his own', etc.):

У меня **свой** компьютер I have **my own** computer

У него **свой** мобильный телефон He has **his own** mobile

У вас **свой** лыжи You have **your own** skis

The interrogative and relative pronouns **кто** and **что**

(a) **Кто** and **что** decline as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	кт-о	чт-о
<i>Acc.</i>	к-огó	чт-о
<i>Gen.</i>	к-огó	ч-егó
<i>Dat.</i>	к-омý	ч-емý
<i>Instr.</i>	к-ем	ч-ем
<i>Prep.</i>	к-ом	ч-ём

(b) **Кто** 'who' combines with masculine singular predicates (**Кто голоден?** 'Who is hungry?'). It can be extended by **такой**: **Кто вы такóй/такáя/такíе?** 'Who are you?' (respectively, of a male, a female, and a group). Note the logical consistency of **Кем ты хочешь быть?** 'What [literally 'Who'] do you want to be?'

(c) **Кто** also functions as a relative pronoun to other pronouns (**тот, те, все, никто**, etc.):

Тот, кто отвéтил прáвильно, получíл прéмию **The one who answered correctly received a prize**

Не знаю никогó, кто бы так хорошо говорíл **I don't anyone who speaks so well**

(d) **Te, кто** and **все, кто** can take a singular or a plural predicate:

те, кто ушёл/ушли **those who left**

все, кто знает/знают **everyone who knows**

(e) **Что?** 'what?' is used of objects and animals. It can be extended by **такóе**: **Что это такóе?** 'What is that?' As a relative pronoun, it relates back to other inanimate pronouns (**всё, то**, etc.):

Я скажú вам всё, что знаю **I'll tell you all (that) I know**

Я записáл то, что он сказал **I noted down what he said**

(f) Relative **что** also relates back to whole clauses:

Он умер, что, конéчно, печáльно **He died, which of course is sad**

Снег растáял, чегó я не ожидал **The snow melted, which I had not expected**

The interrogative and relative pronouns **како́й**, **котóрый**, and **чей**

(a) **Како́й?** ‘which?, what kind of?’ declines like **плохо́й** (*see page 46*):

Кака́я сего́дня погóда? **What's** the weather like today?

Како́е сего́дня число? **What's** the date today?

Како́й сего́дня день? **What** day is it today?

Кака́я у него машина? **What** kind of car has he got?

Како́й дом ваш? **Which** house is yours?

! Note: the colloquial **что за:** **Что за** погóда сего́дня? **What's** the weather like today? **Что за** шляпа! **'What** a hat!'

(b) **Како́й** is also used in exclamations:

Кака́я ráдость! **What** joy!

(c) **Котóрый** ‘who, which’ declines like **бéлый** (*see page 44*). It relates to animate and inanimate nouns, agreeing with them in gender and number:

дом, **котóрый** стóйт на углу the house **which** stands on the corner

ка́рта, **котóрая** висíт на стené the map **that** hangs on the wall

окнó, **котóрое** закрыто the window **that** is shut

де́ти, **котóрые** учатся the children **who** are studying

However, the *case* of **котóрый** is determined by the grammar of its own clause, and **not** by its antecedent:

Он женился на жéнщине, с **котóрой** познакóмился на балу He married a woman **with whom** he became acquainted at a dance

Я говорил с учеником, **котóрого** исключíли из школы I was talking to the pupil (**whom**) they had expelled from school

(d) The genitive forms **котóрого**, **котóрой**, and **котóрых** mean ‘whose’ (masculine, feminine, and plural, respectively):

водíтель, машина **котóрого** в гаражé the driver **whose** car is in the garage

девушка, жених **котóрой** за гранíцей the girl **whose** fiancé is abroad

ученик, результа́ты **котóрых** высóкие the pupils **whose** results are impressive

(e) **Что** is sometimes used as relative pronoun to a noun:

Компьютер, что завис The computer **that** crashed
but **который** is preferable, and the norm.

(f) The use of **который** as an *interrogative* is limited largely to the phrases **Котóрый час?** (= **Сколько врёмени?**) ‘What is the time?’ and **В котóром часу?** (= **Во сколько?**) ‘At what time?’

(g) **Чей** ‘whose’ declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	чей	чъ-я	чъ-ё	чъ-и
<i>Acc.</i>	чей	чъ-ю	чъ-ё	чъ-и
<i>Gen.</i>	чъ-егó	чъ-ей	чъ-егó	чъ-их
<i>Dat.</i>	чъ-емú	чъ-ей	чъ-емú	чъ-им
<i>Instr.</i>	чъ-им	чъ-ей	чъ-им	чъ-ими
<i>Prep.</i>	чъ-ём	чъ-ей	чъ-ём	чъ-их

(h) It is used as an interrogative pronoun, appearing mainly in the nominative case:

Чей это дом? **Whose** house is that?

Чья это комната? **Whose** room is that?

Чьё это кольцо? **Whose** ring is that?

Чьи это коньки? **Whose** skates are those?

(i) It can also mean ‘whose’ in a relative meaning, as an alternative to **которого**, **которой**, **которых** (see page 74):

жёнщина, чей муж заболéл the woman **whose** husband fell ill

The indefinite pronouns *кто-то/кто-нибудь, что-то/что-нибудь, какой-то/какой-нибудь, чей-то/чей-нибудь*

(a) The pronouns in *-то* refer to definite persons or objects whose identity is unknown to or has perhaps been forgotten by the speaker. Their existence is not in question, but identification is either impossible or not desirable:

Кто-то стучит в дверь *Someone* is knocking at the door (but I do not know who it is, or will not say)

Они о чём-то говорили, но я не знал, о чём именно They were talking about *something*, but I did not know about what exactly

Он принёс какой-то книгу, но я забыл, как она называлась He brought *some book or other*, but I forgot what it was called

Учительница проверяла чью-то тетрадь The teacher was marking *someone's exercise book*

(b) The pronouns in *-нибудь* are used:

(i) of persons or things not yet defined or selected, and thus not yet in place:

Я должен обратиться к кому-нибудь за помощью I must turn to *someone* (not yet designated) for help

Я куплю ей что-нибудь, но ещё не решил, что именно I will buy her *something*, but haven't yet decided what exactly

Она хочет, чтобы я спел какой-нибудь народную песню She wants me to sing *some folk song or other* (still to be selected)

(ii) when a repeated action involves different persons or objects on different occasions:

Каждый день он приносил какую-нибудь газету Every day he brought *some newspaper or other* (a different one on each occasion)

The pronouns **весь**, **целый**, **сам**, **самый**

(a) **Весь** ‘all, all the’ declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	весь	вс-я	вс-ё	вс-е
<i>Acc.</i>	весь	вс-ю	вс-ё	вс-е
<i>Gen.</i>	вс-егó	вс-ей	вс-егó	вс-ех
<i>Dat.</i>	вс-ему́	вс-ей	вс-ему́	вс-ем
<i>Instr.</i>	вс-ем	вс-ей	вс-ем	вс-ёми
<i>Prep.</i>	вс-ём	вс-ей	вс-ём	вс-ех

Целый ‘a whole’ and **самый** ‘the very’ decline like **белый** (see page 44).

(b) **Весь** means ‘the whole’, **целый** ‘a whole’ (Он съел **всю** дыню ‘He ate **the whole** melon’, Он съел **целую** дыню ‘He ate **a whole** melon’). Plural **все** means ‘all the’ (**все** городá ‘**all the** towns’), plural **целые** means ‘whole’ (**целые** городá ‘**whole** towns’).

(c) **Все** also means ‘everyone’. It takes a plural predicate (**Все знают** ‘Everyone knows’) and the relative pronoun **кто** (**все, кто** ‘everyone who’ – see page 73). **Всё** means ‘everything’ and takes the relative pronoun **что** (**всё, что** ‘everything that’).

(d) The emphatic pronoun **сам** ‘oneself’ declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	сам	сам-á	сам-ó	сám-и
<i>Acc.</i>	сам	сам-ú	сам-ó	сам-íх
<i>Gen.</i>	сам-огó	сам-óй	сам-огó	сам-íх
<i>Dat.</i>	сам-ому́	сам-óй	сам-ому́	сам-íм
<i>Instr.</i>	сам-ím	сам-óй	сам-íм	сам-íми
<i>Prep.</i>	сам-óм	сам-óй	сам-óм	сам-íх

It is used to personalize: Я **сам** решил эту задачу ‘I solved this problem **myself**’, or to emphasize: Мы говорíли с **самым** министром ‘We spoke to the minister **himself**’, and must not be confused with **самый**, which denotes spatial or temporal limit: Мы живём у **самой** реки ‘We live **right by** the river’. Он работает до **самой** нόчи ‘He works **right through** to nightfall’.

The negative pronouns **никтó, ничтó, никакóй, ничéй**

(a) **Никтó** ‘no one, nobody’ declines like **кто** (see page 73) and takes a masculine singular predicate (**Никтó не готóв** ‘No one’s ready’). It combines with the negative particle **не**, except in one-word answers (**Кто пришёл?** ‘Who came?’ **Никтó** ‘No one’):

Никтó не знаёт Nobody knows

Я никогó не знаю I don’t know anyone

Он никомú не помогаёт He doesn’t help anyone

Prepositions appear between **ни** and the oblique case form:

Она ни на когó не смотрит She’s not looking **at anyone**

(b) Russian can accumulate negatives (unlike English, which reverts to *positive* pronouns [and adverbs, see page 180] after the first negative):

Никтó никогдá ничегó не знаёт No one ever knows anything

(c) **Ничтó** ‘nothing’ declines like **что** (see page 73). It also combines with the negative particle **не**:

Ничтó егó не волнует Nothing worries him

Ничегó не произошлó Nothing happened

Он ничегó не знает He doesn’t know anything

Он ничемú не вéрит He doesn’t believe anything

! Note: As indicated under **никтó**, above, negatives can accumulate:

Никтó никогдá ничегó не говорíт No one ever says anything

(d) Prepositions come between **ни** and oblique cases of **что**:

Он ни за что не заплатíл He didn’t pay for anything

(e) **Ниакóй** ‘no, none at all’ declines like **плохóй** (see page 46). It combines with **не** or **нет** and is used mainly for emphasis (prepositions come between **ни** and oblique cases of **какóй**):

Нет никакóго сомнéния There is no doubt at all

(f) **Ничéй** ‘no one’s’ declines like **чей** (see page 75) and combines with **не** (unless used as a predicate: **Этот щенок ничéй** ‘This puppy isn’t anybody’s’). Prepositions appear between **ни** and the relevant form of **чей**.

The pronouns **некого** and **ничего**

(a) The declension endings of **некого** and **ничего** are identical with those of **кто** and **что** (see page 73), but neither pronoun has a nominative case and the stress always falls on **нё-**. The pronouns indicate lack of potential for carrying out an action or process and comprise:

нё- + case form (determined by following infinitive) + infinitive:

Некого спросить There is no one to ask

Некем любоваться There is no one to admire

Ничего делать There is nothing to do

Нечем гордиться There is nothing to be proud of

(b) Prepositions appear between **нё** and the case form of the pronoun:

Нё с кем дружить There is no one to be friends with

Нё к кому обращаться There is no one to turn to

Нё о чём думать There is nothing to think about

(c) There is a past-tense equivalent with **было**, and a future-tense equivalent with **будет**:

Ничего было делать There **was** nothing to do

Нё с кем будет дружить There **will be** no one to be friends with
and an opposite, affirmative construction in **есть/было/будет**:

Есть с кем играть There **is** someone to play with

Было/будет кого спросить There **was/will be** someone to ask

(d) The logical **subject** of a verb (that is to say, the person who performs the action referred to) appears in the *dative*:

Ему ничего делать **He** has nothing to do

Нам нё с кем было посоветоваться **We** had no one to consult

(e) If the **negative pronoun** is the logical subject of the verb, then it appears in the dative:

Некому мыть машину There is **no one** to wash the car

The numeral

I Cardinal numerals (one, two, three, etc.)

0	ноль/нуль	18	восемнáдцать
1	оди́н, одна́, одно́, одни́	19	девятнáдцать
2	два, две	20	двáдцать
3	три	30	трíдцать
4	четы́ре	40	сóрок
5	пять	50	пятьдеся́т
6	шесть	60	шестьдеся́т
7	сéмь	70	сéмьдеся́т
8	вóсемь	80	вóсемьдеся́т
9	дéвять	90	девяносто
10	дéсять	100	сто
11	оди́ннадцать	200	двéсти
12	две́нáдцать	300	трíста
13	трина́дцать	400	четы́реста
14	четы́рнадцать	500	пятьсóт
15	пятнáдцать	600	шестьсóт
16	шестнáдцать	700	сéмьсóт
17	семнáдцать	800	восемьсóт
		900	девятьсóт

1,000	ты́сяча
2,000	две ты́сячи
5,000	пять ты́сяч
1,000,000	миллиón
2,000,000	два миллиóна
5,000,000	пять миллиóнов
1,000,000,000	миллиáрд/билиón
1,000,000,000,000	триллиón

Notes on the form and formation of cardinal numerals

- (a) Of numerals 11–19, only 11 (оди́ннадцать) and 14 (четы́рнадцать) are *not* stressed on the first -a-.
- (b) The numerals 50–80 have a central, but not a final soft sign. 50 and 60 have final stress, 70 and 80 initial stress.
- (c) Тысяча ‘thousand’ can be written 1000, 1.000, or 1 000 (but *never* with a comma).
- (d) Compound cardinal numerals are formed by placing simple numerals in sequence: двáдцать одíн ‘21’, три ты́сячи трýста сорок пять ‘three thousand three hundred and forty-five’.

Cardinals as serial numbers

- (a) Apart from indicating quantity, cardinals can also denote numbers in a series or sequence: кóмната (нóмер) дéвять ‘room (number) nine’, Казáнская, 6 ‘6 Kazan Street’, дом двенáдцать, квартира сто сорок ‘house number twelve, apartment one hundred and forty’, рейс двáдцать четы́ре ‘flight number twenty-four’.
- (b) Telephone and fax numbers are read as follows: два ноль семь – ноль девяно́сто пять – четы́реста девяно́сто семь – двáдцать один шестьдеся́т пять: 007 (Russian Federation) – 095 (Moscow) – 497 2165 (seven-digit local number), i.e. they are read as words, *not* (as in English) as individual digits.

Биллион

Both миллиáрд and биллиón mean ‘one thousand million’ (English ‘billion’ can mean ‘one thousand million’ or ‘a million million’).

Approximation

Approximation is rendered by inverting numeral and noun: дня три ‘about three days’ (prepositions are placed centrally: дня чéрез три ‘in about three days’ time’).

Ноль/нуль ‘nought, zero’

(a) **Ноль** and **нуль** decline like soft-sign masculine nouns:

выйше/ниже нуля́ above/below zero

начинáть с нуля́ to start from scratch

(b) They govern the genitive (singular or plural):

ноль внимáния zero attention

ноль градусов zero degrees

Одíн, одná, однó, однí ‘one’

(a) Одíн declines with hard endings except for masculine and neuter instrumental and the whole of the plural, which have soft endings:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	одíн	однá	однó	одн-í
<i>Acc.</i>	одíн	одн-ý	одн-ó	одн-í
<i>Gen.</i>	одн-огó	одн-óй	одн-огó	одн-íх
<i>Dat.</i>	одн-омý	одн-óй	одн-омý	одн-ím
<i>Instr.</i>	одн-ím	одн-óй	одн-ím	одн-íми
<i>Prep.</i>	одн-óм	одн-óй	одн-óм	одн-íх

(b) Numeral and noun agree in gender, number, and case:

одíн костюм one suit

одná lámpa one lamp

однó поле one field

однí сáнки one sledge

ценá одногó билéта the price of one ticket

Он купíл однú дыню He bought one melon

Она́ двинула однóй рукóй She moved one arm

(c) Одíн can also mean ‘the same’ and ‘alone, by oneself’:

Онí служíли в однóм полку They served in the same regiment

Он живёт одíн He lives alone

(d) ‘One of’ is rendered as одíн из + genitive:

Он был однíм из моих учителéй He was one of my teachers

(e) Compound numerals ending with **один** also take a singular noun and predicate:

Двáдцать одна девушка записáлась на кúрсы Twenty-one girls enrolled for the course

(f) All numerals in a compound decline:

Съéхались делегáты из тридцатí однóй страны Delegates from **thirty-one countries convened**

(g) The masculine animate-accusative = genitive rule applies to **один** individually or as final element in a compound:

Она встрéтила одного ученика She met **one pupil**

Угónщики убíли пятьдесáт одного пассажíра The hijackers killed **fifty-one passengers**

(h) **Одни ... другие** means 'Some ... others':

Одни за, другие против Some are for, others against

Полторá/полторы 'one and a half'

(a) Полторá is used with *masculine* and *neuter* nouns, полторы with *feminine* nouns. Both take the genitive singular:

полторá дня a day and a half

полторá очká a point and a half

полторы недéли a week and a half

(b) Полторá/полторы share the oblique case полútora, which agrees with plural forms of the noun:

мénьше полútora киломéтров less than a kilometre and a half

в полútora часáх лёта от Брюссéля an hour and a half's flight from Brussels

Note: два с половиной часá 'two and a half hours', пять с половиной часóв 'five and a half hours', etc.

Два/две 'two', три 'three', четыре 'four'

(a) The numerals **два/две**, **три**, and **четыре** take the genitive singular of nouns when the numerals themselves are in the nominative/accusative case.

(b) **Два** is used with *masculine* and *neuter* nouns, **две** with *feminine* nouns. Both take the genitive singular:

два шага two *paces*

два места two *places*

две девушки two *girls*

(c) **Три** and **четыре** are used with masculine, feminine, or neuter nouns and also take the genitive singular:

три/четыре словаря three/four *dictionaries*

три/четыре здания three/four *buildings*

три/четыре кошки three/four *cats*

(d) Adjectives qualifying masculine and neuter nouns appear in the genitive *plural* after **два**, **три**, **четыре**, those qualifying feminine nouns in the *nominative plural* after **две**, **три**, **четыре**:

два местных поезда two *local trains*

три больших облака three *large clouds*

четыре чистые рубашки four *clean shirts*

(e) The same rule applies to *compound* numerals ending with **два/две**, **три**, or **четыре**:

сорок два дождливых дня forty-two *rainy days*

тридцать три открытых окна thirty-three *open windows*

двадцать четыре новые марки twenty-four *new stamps*

Declension of **два/две, три, and четыре**

(a) 2–4 decline as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	дв-а/дв-е	тр-и	четыр-е
<i>Acc.</i>	дв-а/дв-е	тр-и	четыр-е
<i>Gen.</i>	дв-ух	тр-ёх	четыр-ёх
<i>Dat.</i>	дв-ум	тр-ём	четыр-ём
<i>Instr.</i>	дв-умя	тр-емя	четырь-мя
<i>Prep.</i>	дв-ух	тр-ёх	четыр-ёх

(b) The declined forms agree with nouns and adjectives in the same case of the **plural** (e.g. двух, трёх, четырёх agree with the genitive plural of the noun, двум, трём, четырём with the dative plural):

Он́и шли óколо двух днéй	They walked for about two days
Он кончил к трёх часáм	He had finished by three o'clock
мéжду двумá большíми домáми	between two large houses
в четырёх картóнных корóбках	in four cardboard boxes

(c) All components of compound numerals decline:

одíн из тридцатí трёх зáлов	one of the thirty-three halls
в двадцатí двух стрáнах	in twenty-two countries

(d) The animate accusative = genitive rule affects 2, 3, and 4:

Он встрéтил двух друзéй	He met two friends
Онá наказáла трёх дéвочек	She punished three girls
Онá кóрмит четырёх корóв	She feeds the four cows

(e) The rule does *not* apply, however, when they form part of compound numerals:

Я вýдел пятьдесáт два солдáта	I saw fifty-two soldiers
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

Óba/óbe 'both'

Óba takes the genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns and the genitive *plural* of adjectives, óbe the genitive singular of feminine nouns and the *nominative* plural of adjectives:

óба взrослых сына	both grown-up sons
óбе сéверные столíцы	both northern capitals

The numerals пять ‘five’ and above

(a) The numerals пять ‘five’ and above take the genitive plural of nouns, when the numerals themselves are in the nominative/accusative case:

пять книг five books

сто звёзд a hundred stars

тридцать заводов thirty factories

тысяча дней a thousand days

(b) However, compound numerals ending in **один**, **одна**, **одно** take the nominative singular of a noun and those in **два/две**, **три**, **четыре** take the genitive singular of a noun (see pages 82–84):

сорок один кандидат forty-one candidates

сорок два кандидата forty-two candidates

сорок три кандидата forty-three candidates

сорок четыре кандидата forty-four candidates

сорок пять кандидатов forty-five candidates

The numerals пять ‘five’ and above decline, and agree in their oblique cases with nouns in the same case of the plural (e.g. instrumental пятью agrees with the instrumental plural of a noun). All parts of a compound numeral decline:

в трёхстах двадцати двух реках in 322 rivers

Declension type I: пять ‘five’

Пять declines like a feminine singular soft-ending noun (see page 25), with end stress in declension:

<i>Nom./Acc.</i>	пять
<i>Gen./Dat./Prep.</i>	пят-и
<i>Instr.</i>	пять-ю

Likewise шесть ‘six’, семь ‘seven’, восьмь ‘eight’ (genitive/dative/prepositional восьмí, instrumental восьмью or восемью), девять ‘nine’, десять ‘ten’, двадцать ‘twenty’, тридцать ‘thirty’:

рабочие пяти заводов the workers of five factories

к шести часам by six o’clock

город с восьмью парками a town with eight parks

в двадцати магазинах in twenty shops

Declension type II: 11–19 (as пять (see page 86), but with stem stress)

This applies to the numerals **оди́ннадцать** ‘eleven’ through to **девятнáдцать** ‘nineteen’:

комáнды двенáдцати кораблéй the crews of twelve ships

Он помóг четырнадцати дéтям He helped 14 children

дом с шестнáдцатью кварти́рами a house with sixteen flats

Declension type III: 50–80

These numerals decline as follows, with *medial* stress in oblique cases:

Nom./Acc. пятьдеся́т

Gen./Dat./Prep. пяти́десят-и

Instr. пятью́десять-ю

Likewise шестьдеся́т ‘60’, сéмьдесят ‘70’, вóсемьдесят ‘80’:

больше шести́десяти рублéй more than sixty roubles

гóрод с семью́десятью театра́ми a city with 70 theatres

Declension type IV: сорок ‘forty’, девяно́сто ‘ninety’, сто ‘hundred’

Each of these numerals has a single oblique case in -а. Their genitive/dative/instrumental/prepositional cases are **сорок-á**, **девяно́ст-а**, and **ст-а**:

оди́н из сорокá гостéй one of the forty guests

Он заплатíл ста рабóчим He paid a hundred workers

в девяно́ста лагерíх in ninety camps

The animate accusative rule

Only the numerals **оди́н** ‘one’, **два/две** ‘two’, **óба/óбе** ‘both’ (genitive-animate accusative **обóих/обéих**), **три** ‘three’, and **четыре** ‘four’ and numerals ending in **оди́н** are affected by the animate accusative = genitive rule (also the collective numerals see page 89). The numerals 5–100 are *not* affected, thus:

Я вýжу одногó мáльчика I see one boy

Я вýжу двух дéвочек I see two girls

Я вýжу пять/сóрок солдáт I see five/forty soldiers

Declension type V: 200–900

(a) Both parts of the numerals **две́сти**, **трíста**, **четы́реста** decline, the first part like **два/две**, **три**, **четыре**, the second part with plural noun endings:

<i>Nom./Acc.</i>	две́ст-и	трíст-а	четы́рест-а
<i>Gen.</i>	двухсóт	трёхсóт	четырёхсóт
<i>Dat.</i>	двумст-áм	трёмст-áм	четырёмст-áм
<i>Instr.</i>	двумяст-áми	тремяст-áми	четырьмяст-áми
<i>Prep.</i>	двухст-áх	трёхст-áх	четырёхст-áх

(b) Likewise, both parts of **пятьсóт**, **шестьсóт**, **семьсóт**, **восемьсóт**, **девятьсóт** decline, the first part like **пять**, **шесть**, **семь**, **вóсемь**, **дéвять**, the second part with plural noun endings:

<i>Nom./Acc.</i>	пятьсóт
<i>Gen.</i>	пятисóт
<i>Dat.</i>	пятист-áм
<i>Instr.</i>	пятьюст-áми
<i>Prep.</i>	пятист-áх

ценá двухсóт сигáр the price of two hundred cigars
 с тремястáми тáнками with 300 tanks
 в пятистáх деревнáх in 500 villages

Declension type VI: **тысяча** ‘1,000’, **миллион** ‘million’, **миллиáрд/ биллион** ‘thousand million’, **триллион** ‘trillion’

These numerals decline like nouns (**тысяча** like a feminine noun, the rest like masculine nouns) and can appear in multiples (**две тысячи** ‘two thousand’, **дéсять миллиónов** ‘ten million’, etc.). They are followed by the **genitive plural**, *whatever their own case*:

с двумá ты́сячами солдáт with two thousand **soldiers**
 в миллио́не семéй in a million **families**

I The collective numerals

(a) The collective numerals comprise **двоé** ‘two’, **трóe** ‘three’, **чéтвéро** ‘four’, **пáттеро** ‘five’, **шéстепero** ‘six’, **сéмepo** ‘seven’, **вóсьмеро** ‘eight’, **дéвятеро** ‘nine’, **дéсятеро** ‘ten’. They take the genitive plural, when the numerals themselves are in the nominative/accusative case, and are widely used with plural-only nouns:

двоé сútok two days and nights

трóe сáнок three sledges

чéтвéро носíлок four stretchers

пáттеро часóв five clocks

(b) Collective numerals cannot appear in compounds. Instead, synonyms are used (e.g. **день** ‘day’ for **сúтки** ‘day, twenty-four-hour period’: **сóрок два дня** ‘forty-two days’), or circumlocutions such as **в колíчестве** ‘numbering’ (**в колíчестве сорокá двух** ‘numbering forty-two’).

(c) Although the collective numerals decline (**двоé, двойх, двойм,** **двойми, двойх,** likewise **трóe;** **чéтвéро, четверых, четверым,** **четверыми, четверых,** likewise **пáттеро, шéстепero, сéмepo,** **вóсьмеро, дéвятеро, дéсятеро**), their oblique cases are not used with the oblique cases of plural-only nouns; the oblique cases of cardinal numerals are used instead, thus:

двоé ворóт two gates

but:

У двух ворóт стояли солдáты Soldiers stood at the **two gates**

(d) The collective numerals are also used with **дéти** ‘children’ (**двоé детéй** ‘two children’, **трóe детéй** ‘three children’), with **ребéыта** ‘children’, **внуки** ‘grandchildren’, and with **близнецы** (**чéтвéро близнецóв** ‘quadruplets’). They are also used with masculine animate nouns, as an alternative to cardinal numerals (**два студéнта/двоé студéнтов** ‘two students’), and when an animate noun is omitted from a numeral phrase: **Нас пáттеро** ‘There are five of us’, **кóмната на двойх** ‘a room for two’.

Singular or plural predicate

The use of singular or plural predicate with numerals and numeral phrases depends on various factors:

The **plural** is preferred:

(a) when a deliberate action is performed:

Трое моряков спасли ребёнка The three sailors **saved** the child

Несколько человек тренируются A few people **are training**

(b) with short adjectives:

Два из костюмов ему **велики** Two of the suits **are too big** for him

(c) with **оба/обе** 'both':

Оба друга **женились** Both friends **got married**

A **singular** predicate is usual:

(a) when the verb denotes existence or state:

В комнате **было** пять человек There **were** five people in the room

На столе **лежит** три книги Three books **are lying** on the table

(b) with a passive construction or concept:

Убито семь пассажиров Seven passengers **have been killed**

Погибли три женщины Three women **have perished**

(c) in expressions denoting the passing of time:

Пройдёт несколько недель A few weeks **will pass**

Мне исполнилось сорок лет I have **turned** forty

Много 'many/much', **мало/немного** 'not much, few', **сколько?** 'how many, how much?', **столько** 'so many, so much' and **немало** 'not a little, not a few' almost always take a singular predicate: У неё **было** много/мало денег 'She **had** a lot of/not much money'. **Большинство** 'majority' takes a singular predicate unless followed by an animate noun in the genitive plural, when it takes a *plural* predicate: Большинство рабочих **бастовали** 'Most workers **were on strike**'.

I Ordinal numerals (numerals that indicate order, position, or sequence)

1st	пéрвый -ая -ое -ые	15th	пятнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые
2nd	вторóй -ая -ое -ые	16th	шестнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые
3rd	трéтий -ья -ье -ьи	17th	семнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые
4th	четвéртый -ая -ое -ые	18th	восемнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые
5th	пáтый -ая -ое -ые	19th	девятнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые
6th	шестóй -ая -ое -ые	20th	двадцáтый -ая -ое -ые
7th	седьмóй -ая -ое -ые	30th	тридцáтый -ая -ое -ые
8th	восьмóй -ая -ое -ые	40th	сороковóй -ая -ое -ые
9th	девятый -ая -ое -ые	50th	пятидесáтый -ая -ое -ые
10th	десáтый -ая -ое -ые	60th	шестидесáтый -ая -ое -ые
11th	одиннáдцатый -ая -ое -ые	70th	семидесáтый -ая -ое -ые
12th	двенáдцатый -ая -ое -ые	80th	восьмидесáтый -ая -ое -ые
13th	тринáдцатый -ая -ое -ые	90th	девяностый -ая -ое -ые
14th	четырнáдцатый -ая -ое -ые	100th	стоый -ая -ое -ые

200th	двухсóтый -ая -ое -ые
300th	трёхсóтый -ая -ое -ые
400th	четырёхсóтый -ая -ое -ые
500th	пятисóтый -ая -ое -ые
600th	шестисóтый -ая -ое -ые
700th	семисóтый -ая -ое -ые
800th	восьмисóтый -ая -ое -ые
900th	девятисóтый -ая -ое -ые
1,000th	тысячный
2,000th	двуухтысячный -ая -ое -ые
3,000th	трёхтысячный -ая -ое -ые
4,000th	четырёхтысячный -ая -ое -ые
5,000th	пятитысячный -ая -ое -ые

1,000,000th	миллионный -ая -ое -ые
2,000,000th	двуухмиллионный -ая -ое -ые
1,000,000,000th	триллионный -ая -ое -ые

Ordinal numerals: some notes on formation

- (a) Only the *final* component of a compound ordinal numeral is an ordinal. The rest are cardinals: *сто пятидесятый посетитель* ‘the hundred and fiftieth visitor’.
- (b) The initial components of **пятидесятый** ‘fiftieth’ to **восьмидесятый** ‘eightieth’, and **двухсотый** ‘two-hundredth’ to **девятисотый** ‘nine-hundredth’ are in the *genitive* case. This also occurs in multiples of **тысячный** ‘thousand’ (e.g. **сорокатысячный** ‘forty thousandth’).
- (c) Exceptions include **девяносто** ‘ninety’ and **сто** ‘hundred’, which do *not* appear in the genitive case when functioning as initial components of a compound ordinal numeral:
девяностотысячный ‘ninety thousandth’, **стотысячный** ‘hundred thousandth’. This principle (that the first numeral component in a compound appears in the genitive case except for **девяносто** ‘ninety’ and **сто** ‘hundred’ [note also **одно-**, as in **однолётний** ‘one-year’]) applies more generally: **пятилётие** ‘fifth anniversary’, **сорокачетырёхлетний мужчина** ‘a forty-four-year-old man’, **столетие** ‘century, centenary’.

Abbreviated ordinal numerals

Abbreviations end in the final letter of the ordinal, thus: **1-й** for **первый** ‘first’, unless the last letter but one is a consonant, when the last two letters of the ordinal appear in the abbreviation: **события 2-го** (for **второго**) **дня** ‘events of the second day’.

Declension of ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals decline like adjectives (see page 44). **Третий** ‘third’ declines as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	третий	третья	третье	третьи
<i>Acc.</i>	третий	третью	третье	третьи
<i>Gen.</i>	третьего	третьей	третьего	третьих
<i>Dat.</i>	третьему	третьей	третьему	третьим
<i>Instr.</i>	третьим	третьей	третьим	третьими
<i>Prep.</i>	третьем	третьей	третьем	третьих

Using ordinal numerals

(a) Like adjectives, ordinal numerals agree with nouns in gender, case, and number:

во вре́мя Второ́й мирово́й во́йны during the *Second World War*

оди́н из мо́их пе́рвых дру́зéй one of my *first friends*

(b) An ordinal numeral is sometimes used where English would have a cardinal:

урóк пе́рвый lesson *one*

страни́ца сто се́дмáя page *one hundred and seven*

главá трéтья chapter *three*

четвёртая прогráмма channel *four*

сóрок пе́рвый размéр size *forty-one*

шестнáдцатый ряд row *sixteen*

пáтый автóбус the number *five bus*

(c) In numbering *rooms*, either cardinals or ordinals may be used:

кóмната тридцáть три/тридцáть трéтья room *thirty-three*

(d) Ordinals combine with **по** + dative (compare use of a superlative in English) in indicating *relative dimension*:

трéтья по высотé горá the third *highest* mountain

Fractions and decimals

Cardinals and ordinals are used in the formation of fractions: **одна пáтая** ‘one fifth’, **сéмь и чéтыре сéдмых** ‘seven and four sevenths’. The dependent noun appears in the genitive *singular*: **пять и две пáтых киломéтра** ‘five and two fifths of a kilometre’. Decimals are based on tenths (0,1 or **одна десятая** = 0.1 or ‘one tenth’), etc. (Russian uses **commas** in forming decimals.)

Roman numerals

Roman numerals are used of centuries (**XXI век** ‘the 21st century’), and of important events: **X Конгрéсс** ‘The 10th Congress’.

Telling the time

Котóрый час? Скóлько врéмени? 'What's the time?'

(a) These questions can be answered using cardinal numerals only:

три пятнáдцать three fifteen

(b) The twenty-four-hour clock is commonly used:

шестнáдцать двáдцать twenty past four p.m., 16.20

двáдцать два ноль пять five past ten p.m., 22.05

(c) Час is used for 'one o'clock' and cardinal numerals + часá/часóв for subsequent hours:

час one o'clock

два часá/три часá/четыре часá two/three/four o'clock

пять часóв то двенáдцать часóв five o'clock to 12 o'clock

(d) Before or after the hour, either the 24-hour system is used or:

(i) up to the half hour the construction 'so many minutes of the next hour' (represented by the genitive of an ordinal numeral):

пять (минút) трéтьего five past two

дéсять (минút) трéтьего ten past two

чéтверть трéтьего quarter past two

двáдцать (минút) трéтьего twenty past two

двáдцать пять (минút) трéтьего twenty-five past two

половíна трéтьего (полтрéтьего) half past two

(ii) after the half hour, без + genitive:

без двадцатí пяти (минút) три twenty-five to three

без двадцатí (минút) три twenty to three

без чéверти три a quarter to three

без десяти (минút) три ten to three

без пяти (минút) три five to three

Note: минút is mandatory only with numerals that are *not* multiples of пять, thus: **без семí минút четыре** 'seven minutes to four', but **без десяти (минút) четыре** 'ten minutes to four'.

В котóром часу? Во скóлько? 'At what time?'

(a) These questions are answered by prefacing times up to and including the half hour by в: **в семь часóв** 'at seven o'clock', в

чeтвeрть пeрвого ‘at quarter past twelve’, **в пoльвocьмoгo** (or **в половиnе восьмoгo** ‘at half-past seven’), etc.

(b) If there is another preposition present, the **в** is omitted, e.g., **около пяти часoв** ‘at about five o’clock’. Times after the half-hour are left unchanged: **бeз двадцати пяти минuт дeсять** ‘twenty-five to ten’ and ‘at twenty-five to ten’.

(c) The day (twenty-four hours) is divided up as follows:

час/два часa/три часa нoчи one/two/three o’clock **in the morning/a.m.**

четыре часa through to **одиннадцать часoв утpa** four o’clock to eleven o’clock **in the morning/a.m.**

час/два часa/три часa/четыре часa/пять часoв дня one/two/three/four/five o’clock **in the afternoon/p.m.**

шeсть часoв through to **одиннадцать часoв вeчera** six o’clock to eleven o’clock **in the evening/p.m.**

Какое число? ‘What is the date?’

The question is answered using a neuter ordinal in the nominative case (the name of the *month* is in the genitive: **Сeгoдня девятoe мaя** ‘It’s the ninth of May’).

Какого числа? ‘On what date?’

The question is answered using the genitive of a neuter ordinal (the *month* and the *year* also appear in the genitive case): **двадцать четвeртого декабря тысяча девятьсот девяносто девятого года** ‘on the twenty-fourth of December 1999’.

В каком году? ‘In which year?’

(a) The question is answered by using **в** + an ordinal numeral in the **prepositional case** (only the *final* component is an ordinal: the rest are cardinal numerals in the nominative case):

в две тысячи двадцатом году in 2020

(b) If any detail is added, ordinal and year appear in the **genitive case**:

в мaрте две тысячи пятого гoда in March 2005

в пятницу трeтъего мaя две тысячи второго гoда on Friday 3 May 2002

The verb

A verb is a part of speech that expresses an action (**он пишет** ‘he is writing’) or state (**она стоит** ‘she is standing’). A Russian verb can be transitive, requiring an object in the accusative case to complete it (**Она включила лампу** ‘She switched on the lamp’), or intransitive, not requiring an object to complete it (**Он спал** ‘He was asleep’).

I The conjugations

There are two patterns of conjugation: the **first** conjugation and the **second** conjugation.

I The first conjugation

First-conjugation verbs subdivide into those with present-future stems ending in a vowel and those with present-future stems ending in a consonant. The present-future stem of a verb is revealed by removing the last two letters of the third-person plural. Thus, the stem of **читать** ‘to read’, third-person plural **чита-ют**, ends in the vowel **а**, and the stem of **писать** ‘to write’, third-person plural **пиш-ут**, ends in the consonant **ш**.

Vowel stems

First-conjugation verbs with vowel stems include:

- (a) very many verbs in **-ать** and **-ять** (e.g. **читать** ‘to read’, **терять** ‘to lose’)
- (b) all verbs in **-авать** (e.g. **давать** ‘to give’)
- (c) all verbs in **-овать** and **-евать** (e.g. **голосовать** ‘to vote’, **шевять** ‘to spit’)
- (d) very many verbs in **-еть** (e.g. **иметь** ‘to have’)
- (e) a few verbs in **-ить** (e.g. **пить** ‘to drink’)
- (f) some verbs in **-ыть** (e.g. **мыть** ‘to wash’)
- (g) a few verbs in **-уть** (e.g. **дуть** ‘to blow’)

First-conjugation endings

Verbs of the first conjugation add the following endings to the stem: **-ю, -ешь, -ет, -ем, -ете, -ют**

- !** Note: (a) **-ю** and **-ют** are usually replaced by **-y** and **-ут** after a consonant.
 (b) **ю** and **я** are replaced, respectively, by **y** and **a** after **ж, ч, ш, or щ**.
 (c) in the conjugation of some verbs, **-e** is replaced by **-ё** under stress.

First-conjugation verbs with vowel stems

(a) Verbs in **-ать/-ять**

Verbs in -ать	Verbs in -ять (end-stressed)	Verbs in -ять (stem-stressed)
играть 'to play'	стреля́ть 'to shoot'	сéять 'to sow'
я игрá-ю	стреля́-ю	сé-ю
ты игрá-ешь	стреля́-ешь	сé-ешь
он игрá-ет	стреля́-ет	сé-ет
мы игрá-ем	стреля́-ем	сé-ем
вы игрá-ете	стреля́-ете	сé-ете
они игрá-ют	стреля́-ют	сé-ют

- !** Note: (i) Stem-stressed verbs in **-ять** include **лáять** 'to bark' and **тáять** 'to melt' (intransitive). They conjugate like **сéять** 'to sow' (however, stem-stressed **кашлять** 'to cough' conjugates like **стреля́ть** 'to shoot').
 (ii) **смеяться** 'to laugh' conjugates **смеёсь**, **смеёшься**, **смеётся**, **смеёмся**, **смеётесь**, **смеётся** (see pages 137, 138).

(b) Verbs in **-авать**

These include **давáть** 'to give' and its compounds, as well as compounds of **-знавáть** and **-ставáть**:

давать 'to give'	признавáть 'to acknowledge'	вставáть 'to get up'
я да-ю	призна-ю	вста-ю
ты да-ёшь	призна-ёшь	вста-ёшь
он да-ёт	призна-ёт	вста-ёт
мы да-ём	призна-ём	вста-ём
вы да-ёте	призна-ёте	вста-ёте
они да-ют	призна-ют	вста-ют

(c) Verbs in -овать/-евать

Conjugation of **использовать** ‘to use’ and **воевать** ‘to wage war’:

я использу-ю	я вою-ю
ты использу-ешь	ты вою-ешь
он использу-ет	он вою-ет
мы использу-ем	мы вою-ем
вы использу-ете	вы вою-ете
они использу-ют	они вою-ют

! Note: (i) Some verbs take -ё- under stress: **жевать** ‘to chew’ (жу́ю, жуёшь), **плевать** ‘to spit’ (плю́ю, плюёшь).

(ii) Secondary imperfective verbs in -евать (verbs that derive from a perfective verb by the insertion of a suffix, e.g. **надевать** ‘to put on’ and **успевать** ‘to have time to, manage’) conjugate like **играть** ‘to play’.

(d) Verbs in -еть

The verb **уметь** ‘to know how to’ conjugates as follows:

я уме-ю	мы уме-ем
ты уме-ешь	вы уме-ете
он уме-ет	они уме-ют

Likewise **владеть** ‘to own’, **греть** ‘to heat’, **жалеть** ‘to pity’, **иметь** ‘to have’, **сметь** ‘to dare’, and many verbs derived from adjectives: **богатеть** ‘to get rich’ (from **богатый** ‘rich’), **краснеть** ‘to blush’ (from **красный** ‘red’), **полнеть** ‘to put on weight’ (from **полный** ‘stout’), **стареть** ‘to age’ (from **старый** ‘old’), as well as a few verbs derived from nouns: **сиротеть** ‘to be orphaned’ (from **сирота** ‘orphan’).

The verb **петь** ‘to sing’ conjugates as follows:

я по-ю	мы по-ём
ты по-ёшь	вы по-ёте
он по-ёт	они по-ют

(e) Verbs in -ить

The verb **пить** ‘to drink’ conjugates as follows:

я пь-ю	мы пь-ём
ты пь-ёшь	вы пь-ёте
он пь-ёт	они́ пь-ют

Likewise **бить** ‘to hit’, **лить** ‘to pour’, **шить** ‘to sew’.

The verb **брить** ‘to shave’ (transitive) conjugates as follows:

я брё-ю	мы брё-ем
ты брё-ешь	вы брё-ете
он брё-ет	они́ брё-ют

(f) Verbs in -ыть

The verb **мыть** ‘to wash’ conjugates as follows:

я мό-ю	мы мό-ем
ты мό-ешь	вы мό-ете
он мό-ет	они́ мό-ют

Likewise **рыть** ‘to dig’, and compounds of **-крыть**.

(g) Verbs in -уть

The only common verb in this category is **дуть** ‘to blow’:

я ду́-ю	мы ду́-ем
ты ду́-ешь	вы ду́-ете
он ду́-ет	они́ ду́-ют

First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems

(a) Verbs with consonant change throughout conjugation

The following consonant changes occur throughout the conjugation of a number of first-conjugation verbs with stems ending in consonants:

3-ж	к-ч	м-мл	п-пл
рéзать	плáкать	дремáть	щипáть
'to cut'	'to weep'	'to doze'	'to pinch'
я рéж-у	плáч-у	дремл-ю́	щипл-ю́
ты рéж-ешь	плáч-ешь	дрéмл-ешь	щíпл-ешь
он рéж-ет	плáч-ет	дрéмл-ет	щíпл-ет
мы рéж-ем	плáч-ем	дрéмл-ем	щíпл-ем
вы рéж-ете	плáч-ете	дрéмл-ете	щíпл-ете
они́ рéж-ут	плáч-ут	дрéмл-ют	щíпл-ют
с-ш	ск-щ	т-ч	х-ш
пи́сать	искáть	прýтать	махáть
'to write'	'to look for'	'to hide'	'to wave'
я пиш-у́	ищ-у́	прýч-у	маш-у́
ты пиш-ешь	ищ-ешь	прýч-ешь	маш-ешь
он пиш-ет	ищ-ет	прýч-ет	маш-ет
мы пиш-ем	ищ-ем	прýч-ем	маш-ем
вы пиш-ете	ищ-ете	прýч-ете	маш-ете
они́ пиш-ут	ищ-ут	прýч-ут	маш-ут

- ! Note: (i) others in the series include казáться (кажúсь, кáжешься) 'to seem', скакáть (скачу́, скáчешь) 'to gallop', сыпáть (сыплю, сыплешь) 'to pour', чесáть (чешу́, чéшешь) 'to scratch', плеска́ть (плещу́, плéшешь) 'to splash', шептáться (шепчу́, шéпчешь) 'to whisper'.
(ii) колебáться 'to hesitate' conjugates with stress on the stem throughout (колéблюсь, колéблешься).

(b) Other first-conjugation verbs in -ать with stems ending in consonants

брать	éхать	ждать	жать	звать
'to take'	'to travel'	'to wait'	'to press'	'to call'
бер-ý	éд-у	жд-у	жм-у	зов-ý
бер-ёшь	éд-ешь	жд-ёшь	жм-ёшь	зов-ёшь
бер-ёт	éд-ет	жд-ёт	жм-ёт	зов-ёт
бер-ём	éд-ем	жд-ём	жм-ём	зов-ём
бер-ёте	éд-ете	жд-ёте	жм-ёте	зов-ёте
бер-ут	éд-ут	жд-ут	жм-ут	зов-ут

лгать	начáть	рвать	слать	стать
'to tell lies'	'to begin'	'to tear'	'to send'	'to become'
лг-у	начн-ý	рв-у	шл-ю	стáн-у
лж-ёшь	начн-ёшь	рв-ёшь	шл-ёшь	стáн-ёшь
лж-ёт	начн-ёт	рв-ёт	шл-ёт	стáн-ёт
лж-ём	начн-ём	рв-ём	шл-ём	стáн-ём
лж-ёте	начн-ёте	рв-ёте	шл-ёте	стáн-ёте
лг-ут	начн-út	рв-ут	шл-ют	стáн-ут

(c) Verbs in -оть, -нуть, -ереть, -нять

борóться	гíбнуть	терéть	зани́ть	снять
'to struggle'	'to perish'	'to rub'	'to occupy'	'to take off'
бор-юсь	гíбн-у	тр-у	займ-ý	сним-ý
бор-ешься	гíбн-ешь	тр-ёшь	займ-ёшь	сним-ёшь
бор-етсяя	гíбн-ет	тр-ёт	займ-ёт	сним-ёт
бор-емсяя	гíбн-ем	тр-ём	займ-ём	сним-ем
бор-егесь	гíбн-ете	тр-ёте	займ-ёте	сним-ёте
бор-ются	гíбн-ут	тр-ут	займ-ут	сним-ут

! Note: колóть 'to chop' conjugates like борóться, заперéть 'to lock' and умерéть 'to die' like терéть, понíять 'to understand' like зaníть, подníять to pick up like снять. Принíять 'to accept' conjugates **примý**, **прíмешь**, **прíмет**, **прíмем**, **прíмете**, **прíмут**. Most end-stressed verbs in -нуть take -é- in conjugation (e.g. вернú, вернёшь from вернúть 'to return' (transitive)).

(d) Additional first-conjugation verbs with consonant stems

быть 'to be'	взять 'to take'	деть 'to put'	жить 'to live'	плыть 'to swim'
бúд-у	возьм-ú	дéн-у	жив-ý	плыв-ý
бúд-еши	возьм-ёшь	дéн-еши	жив-ёшь	плыв-ёшь
бúд-ет	возьм-ёт	дéн-ет	жив-ёт	плыв-ёт
бúд-ем	возьм-ём	дéн-ем	жив-ём	плыв-ём
бúд-ете	возьм-ёте	дéн-ете	жив-ёте	плыв-ёте
бúд-ут	возьм-ут	дéн-ут	жив-ут	плыв-ут

! Note: **деть** appears mostly in compounds, e.g. **надеть** 'to put on', **одеться** 'to dress (oneself)'.

(e) First-conjugation verbs in -ти

These verbs can be subdivided in accordance with the stem consonants that appear in conjugation:

-д- stems	-з- stems	-с- stems	-т- stems	-ст- stems
вести 'to lead'	везти 'to convey'	нести 'to carry'	мести 'to sweep'	расті 'to grow'
вед-ý	vez-ý	нес-ý	мет-ý	раст-ý
вед-ёши	vez-ёшь	нес-ёши	мет-ёшь	раст-ёшь
вед-ёт	vez-ёт	нес-ёт	мет-ёт	раст-ёт
вед-ём	vez-ём	нес-ём	мет-ём	раст-ём
вед-ёте	vez-ёте	нес-ёте	мет-ёте	раст-ёте
вед-ут	vez-ут	нес-ут	мет-ут	раст-ут

! Note: **идти** 'to go' (иду, идёшь), **ползти** 'to crawl' (ползу, ползёшь), **цвести** 'to bloom' (цвету, цветёшь).

(f) Verbs in -сты/-зть

These can also be subdivided in accordance with their stem consonants:

-д- stems	-з- stems		
класть	ле́зть		
'to put, place'	'to climb'		
клад-у́	клад-ё́м	лéз-у	лéз-е́м
клад-ё́шь	клад-ё́те	лéз-е́шь	лéз-е́те
клад-ё́т	клад-ё́т	лéз-е́т	лéз-у́т

! Note: **красть** 'to steal' and **упасть** 'to fall' conjugate like **класть**, while **сесть** 'to sit down' conjugates **сяду**, **сядешь**, **сядет**, **сядем**, **сядете**, **сядут**.

(g) Verbs in -чъ

Some verbs in **-чъ** conjugate with **-р-** in the first person singular and third person plural, and **-ж-** before **-е-/ë-**, others alternate **-к-** and **-ч-** in analogous positions:

Г-Ж	Г-Ж	Г-Ж	К-Ч
стричь	лечь	мо́чь	печь
'to cut (hair)'	'to lie down'	'to be able'	'to bake'
стриг-у́	ляг-у	мож-у́	пек-у́
стриж-ё́шь	ляж-е́шь	мож-е́шь	печ-ё́шь
стриж-ё́т	ляж-е́т	мож-е́т	печ-ё́т
стриж-ё́м	ляж-е́м	мож-е́м	печ-ё́м
стриж-ё́те	ляж-е́те	мож-е́те	печ-ё́те
стриг-у́т	ляг-ут	мож-ут	пек-у́т

! Note: **жечь** 'to burn' (transitive) conjugates: **жгу**, **жжёшь**, **жжёт**, **жжём**, **жжёте**, **жгут**, **течь** 'to flow' has third-person forms only: **течёт**, **текут**.

I The second conjugation

Verbs of the second conjugation add the following endings to the present-future stem:

-Ю, -ИШЬ, -ИТ, -ИМ, -ИТЕ, -ЯТ

! Note: **ю** is replaced by **ы** and **я** by **а** after **ж, ч, ш, or щ**.

Second-conjugation verbs comprise:

- (a) all verbs in **-ить**, except for those with monosyllabic infinitives and one or two others
- (b) many verbs in **-еть** (some of which describe sounds)
- (c) some verbs in **-ать** (some of which describe sounds)
- (d) **бояться** ‘to fear’ and **стоять** ‘to stand’:

Verbs in -ить	Verbs in -еть	Verbs in -ать	Verbs in -ять
звонить ‘to ring’	смотреть ‘to look’	слышать ‘to hear’	бояться ‘to fear’
звон-ю	смотр-ю	слыш-у	бо-юсь
звон-ишь	смотр-ишь	слыш-ишь	бо-ишься
звон-ит	смотр-ит	слыш-ит	бо-йтся
звон-им	смотр-им	слыш-им	бо-имся
звон-ите	смотр-ите	слыш-ите	бо-итесь
звон-ят	смотр-ят	слыш-ат	бо-ятся

Second-conjugation verbs in **-еть** include: **блестеть** (блестйт, блестят) ‘to shine’, **болеть** (болйт, болят) ‘to hurt’, **видеть** (вижу, видашь) ‘to see’, **висеть** (висйт, висят) ‘to hang’ (intransitive), **гореть** (горйт, горят) ‘to burn’ (intransitive), **грометь** (громйт, громят) ‘to thunder’, **зависеть** (зависит, зависят) ‘to depend’, **кипеть** (кипит, кипят) ‘to boil’ (intransitive), **сидеть** (сиджу, сидишь) ‘to sit’.

Those in **-ать** include: **держать** (держу, держишь) ‘to hold’, **дрожать** (дрожу, дрожишь) ‘to tremble’, **дышать** (дышу, дышишь) ‘to breathe’, **кричать** (кричу, кричишь) ‘to shout’, **лежать** (лежу, лежишь) ‘to lie’, **молчать** (молчу, молчишь), ‘to be silent’, **спать** (сплю, спишь) ‘to sleep’, **стучать** (стучу, стучишь) ‘to knock’).

! Note: Some of the verbs are used in the third person only.

Consonant change

A regular feature of second-conjugation verbs is consonant change in the first-person singular. The following changes take place:

д-ж	з-ж	с-ш
будíть	возíТЬ	гасíТЬ
'to awaken'	'to convey'	'to extinguish'

буж-у́	вож-у́	гаsh-у́
бúд-иши́	вóз-иши́	гáс-иши́
бúд-и́т	вóз-и́т	гáс-и́т
бúд-и́м	вóз-и́м	гáс-и́м
бúд-и́те	вóз-и́те	гáс-и́те
бúд-я́т	вóз-я́т	гáс-я́т

т-ч	т-щ	ст-щ
трáти́ТЬ	посе́ти́ТЬ	чи́стить
'to spend'	'to visit'	'to clean'

трáч-у́	посе́щ-у́	чи́щ-у́
трáт-иши́	посе́т-иши́	чи́ст-иши́
трáт-и́т	посе́т-и́т	чи́ст-и́т
трáт-и́м	посе́т-и́м	чи́ст-и́м
трáт-и́те	посе́т-и́те	чи́ст-и́те
трáт-я́т	посе́т-я́т	чи́ст-я́т

! Note: also б-бл (e.g. люблю́, любиши́, from люби́ть 'to love'), в-вл (e.g. ловлю́, лóвиши́, from лови́ть 'to catch'), м-мл (e.g. кормлю́, кóрмиши́, from корми́ть 'to feed'), п-пл (e.g. ступлю́, стúпиши́, from ступи́ть 'to step').

Consonant change (continued)

Some of the commonest verbs that undergo a consonant change in the first-person singular of second-conjugation verbs include:

б-бл: люби́ть ‘to love’, употреби́ть ‘to use’

в-вл: лови́ть ‘to catch’, стáвить ‘to stand’ (transitive)

д-ж: вíдеть ‘to see’, води́ть ‘to lead’, ездить ‘to travel’, сади́ться ‘to sit down’, сидéть ‘to sit’, ходи́ть ‘to go’

з-ж: изобрази́ть ‘to depict’

м-мл: корми́ть ‘to feed’

п-пл: купи́ть ‘to buy’, спать ‘to sleep’

с-ш: краси́ть ‘to paint’, носи́ть ‘to carry’, проси́ть ‘to request’

ст-щ: простíть ‘to forgive’, пустíть ‘to let go’

т-ч встрéтить ‘to meet’, замéтить ‘to notice’, летéть ‘to fly’, отвéтить ‘to answer’, платíть ‘to pay’

т-щ запретíть ‘to forbid’

Stress change in verbs of the second conjugation

Stress changes from the ending on to the stem in the conjugation of many second-conjugation verbs (beginning with the second person singular).

The following are some of the commonest verbs affected:

буди́ть (бужу́, бúдишь) ‘to awaken’, держа́ть (держу́, дéржишь) ‘to hold’, дыша́ть (дышу́, дышишь) ‘to breathe’, женíться (женю́сь, жéнишься) ‘to marry’ (of a man), курíть (курю́, куришь) ‘to smoke’, лови́ть (ловлю́, лóвишь) ‘to catch’, люби́ть (люблю́, лóбишь) ‘to love’, носи́ть (ношу́, носишь) ‘to carry’, платíть (плачу́, пла́тишь) ‘to pay’, получáть (получу́, полу́чишь) ‘to receive’, проси́ть (прошу́, прóсишь) ‘to request’, пустíть (пущу́, пúстишь) ‘to let go’, служáть (служу́, слúжишь) ‘to serve’, смотрéть (смотрю́, смóтришь) ‘to look’, суди́ть (сужу́, сúдишь) ‘to judge’, учíть (учу́, úчишь) ‘to teach’, учíться (учусь, úчишься) ‘to learn’, ходи́ть (хожу́, хóдишь) ‘to go’, шутíть (шучу́, шúтишь) ‘to joke’.

Irregular verbs

Four verbs do not conform to the pattern of either conjugation:

бежать 'to run'	есть 'to eat'	хотеть 'to want'	дать 'to give'
бег-ú	ем	хоч-ú	дам
беж-и́шь	ешь	хоч-е́шь	дашь
беж-и́т	ест	хоч-е́т	даст
беж-и́м	ед-íм	хот-и́м	дад-и́м
беж-и́те	ед-и́те	хот-и́те	дад-и́те
бег-у́т	ед-я́т	хот-я́т	дад-у́т

I The past tense

(a) The masculine past tense is formed by replacing the infinitive ending **-ть** or **-сть** by **-л** (for exceptions, see page 108):

игrá-ть	спеши́-ть	пе-ть	е-сть
'to play'	'to hurry'	'to sing'	'to eat'
он игрá-л	он спеши́-л	он пе-л	он е-л
'he played'	'he hurried'	'he sang'	'he ate'

(b) The feminine, neuter, and plural are formed by adding **-а**, **-о**, and **-и** to the masculine form:

он игрá-л	она́ игрá-ла	онó игрá-ло	они́ игрá-ли
'he played'	'she played'	'it played'	'they played'

(c) The past tense agrees with the subject in gender and number (i.e. singular or plural), thus, of a male subject, masculine forms are used:

я, ты, он рабóта-л 'I, you, he worked'

and of a female subject, feminine forms:

я, ты, она́ рабóта-ла 'I, you, she worked'

while plural forms are used for мы 'we', вы 'you', and они́ 'they'

мы, вы, они́ рабóта-ли 'we, you, they worked'

Verbs that have no л in the masculine past tense

These include (note that л reappears in the feminine, neuter, and plural forms):

(a) verbs in -чъ, e.g. **мочь** ‘to be able’, **течь** ‘to flow’:

мог моглá моглó моглý

Likewise **берéчъ** ‘to take care of’ (берёг береглá береглó береглý), etc.

тёк теклá теклó теклý

Likewise **печь** ‘to bake’, etc.

(b) verbs in -ти: **вестí** ‘to convey’, **нестí** ‘to carry’, **растí** ‘to grow’ (intransitive):

вёз везлá везлó везлý

нёс неслá неслó неслý

рос рослá рослó рослý

Likewise **спастí** ‘to save’ (спас, спаслá, спаслó, спаслý).

Note: verbs in -ти with -д- or -т- stems do have л in the masculine past: **идтí** ‘to go’, past шёл, шла, шло, шли; **вестí** ‘to lead’, past вёл, велá, велó, велý.

(c) Verbs in -нуть that denote change in state, location, e.g.

замёрзнуть ‘to freeze’ (intransitive):

замёрз замёрзла замёрзло замёрзли

Likewise **исчéзнуть** ‘to disappear’, **погибнуть** ‘to perish’,

привыкнуть ‘to get used to’.

(d) verbs in -ерéть, e.g. **запереть** ‘to lock’, **терéть** ‘to rub’, **умерéть** ‘to die’:

зáпер заперлá зáперло зáперли

тёр тёрла тёрло тёрли

умер умерлá умерло умерли

(e) verbs in -зть (e.g. **лезть** ‘to climb’, past лез, лéзла, лéзло, лéзли) and compounds of **-шибить** (e.g. **ошибítся** ‘to make a mistake’, past ошибся, ошиблась, ошиблось, ошиблись).

I The future tense

The imperfective (*see page 111*) future of the verb consists of the relevant forms of the future tense of the auxiliary verb **быть** 'to be' and the *imperfective* infinitive of the verb (never the perfective infinitive). Thus, the imperfective future of **рабо́тать** 'to work' is:

я бу́ду	рабо́тать	I will	work
ты бу́дешь	рабо́тать	you will	work
он/она́ бу́дет	рабо́тать	he/she will	work
мы бу́дем	рабо́тать	we will	work
вы бу́дете	рабо́тать	you will	work
они́ бу́дут	рабо́тать	they will	work

As well as acting as an auxiliary verb in forming the future of other verbs, the future of **быть** 'to be' is a future in its own right:

я бу́ду	в Москвé	I will be	In Moscow
ты бу́дешь	рад/ráда	you will be	glad
он/она́ бу́дет	хýмиком	he/she will be	a chemist
мы бу́дем	зáняты	we will be	busy
вы бу́дете	за гра́ницей	you will be	abroad
они́ бу́дут	приглашены́	they will be	invited

! Note: The *perfective* future is formed simply by conjugating a perfective verb.

As in English, the *present* tense is often used in Russian with future meaning, especially with verbs of beginning or finishing, and with verbs of motion:

Уро́к начина́ется в шесть часóв The lesson **begins** at six o'clock

Конгрéсс закáнчивается зáвтра The congress **ends** tomorrow
Сего́дня вéчером мы идём в кинó This evening **we are going to** the cinema

Мы прилетáем в Хитроú в час нóчи We **fly** into Heathrow at 1 a.m.

I The imperative

The singular **familiar** form of the imperative is formed by adding:

(a) **-й** to a vowel stem (the third-person plural minus the last two letters), e.g. **играть** ‘to play’:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>3rd person plural</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Imperative</i>
играть	игра-ют	игра-	игра-й! ‘play!’

(b) **-и** to the consonant stem of a verb with *fixed end stress* in conjugation (e.g. **брать** ‘to take’, **беру**, **берёшь**, **говорить** ‘to speak’, **говорю**, **говоришь**), or *mobile* stress in conjugation (e.g. **судить** ‘to judge’, **сужу**, **судишь**)

брать	бер-у́т	бер-	бери! ‘take!’
говорить	говор-я́т	говор-	говори! ‘speak!’
судить	суд-ят	суд-	суди! ‘judge!’

(c) **-ь** to a stem with *fixed* stem stress in conjugation and ending in a single consonant, e.g. **двинуть** ‘to move’:

двинуть	двин-ут	двин-	двин-ь! ‘move!’
---------	---------	-------	-----------------

Stress in imperatives of more than one syllable is on the same syllable as the first-person singular, e.g. **писать** ‘to write’:

писать ‘to write’ пишу ‘I write’ пиши! (imperative) ‘write!’

- ! Note: (a) The verb **дава́ть** and its compounds, and compounds of **-става́ть** and **-знава́ть** form their imperatives from the infinitive: **давай!** ‘give!’, **вставай!** ‘get up!’.
 (b) The imperative of **пить** ‘to drink’ is **пей!** (likewise **бей!** from **бить** ‘to strike’, **лей!** from **лить** ‘to pour’, **шей!** from **шить** ‘to sew’).
 (c) Compounds of **-езжáть** and **-ехáть** share an imperative in **-езжай!**.

The **plural** and **formal** form of the imperative is made by adding **-те** to the singular form: **играйте!** ‘play!’ (to a number of people or someone one addresses as **вы**). Useful imperatives include:

иди(те)! go, come! **смотрí(те)!** look!
слúшай(те)! listen! **не забúдь(те)!** don't forget!
ждí(те)! wait!

The **third-person** imperative comprises the particle **пусть** + third-person singular or plural of a verb: **Пусть он идёт** ‘let him go’, **Пусть они попробуют** ‘let them try’.

I The aspect: preliminary remarks

Almost all Russian verbs have two aspects, an **imperfective** and a **perfective**.

The aspects are formed either:

(a) by prefixation:

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
петь	с-петь	'to sing'

(b) by pairing a first conjugation verb (imperfective) with a second conjugation verb (perfective) :

включ-áть включ-íть 'to switch on'

(c) by inserting a syllable, e.g. **-ва-**, into the perfective:

наде-вá-ть надéть 'to put on'

In a few cases, imperfective and perfective are from different roots, e.g. imperfective **ловíть**, perfective **поймáть** 'to catch'. Imperfective verbs have a past, present, and future, e.g. **звонíть** 'to ring':

<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
он звонíл	он звонíт	он бúдет звонíть

while perfectives have past and future only, e.g. **позвонíть** 'to ring' :

он позвонíл ————— он позвонíт

The **imperfective aspect** denotes:

(a) an action that was, is, or will be in progress ('he was, is, will be ringing'), or

(b) a repeated or habitual action ('he used to ring, rings, will ring').

The **perfective aspect** indicates **completion** of an action in the past ('he made, has made, had made a call') or **intention to complete** an action in the future ('he will make a call, will have made a call'). A **result** is often implied (e.g. a message has been passed on, information is now available, etc.). (For other functions of the perfective, see also page 119.)

- Note:** (a) A number of verbs have an **imperfective aspect only** (e.g. **наблюдать** 'to observe', **состоять** 'to consist of'). Some have a **perfective only** (e.g. **хлынуть** 'to gush'). A small number have the same form for imperfective and perfective, e.g. **использовать** 'to use'.
 (b) Imperfective and perfective differ only in aspect, **not** in meaning.

Prefixation in the formation of the perfective

(a) Prefixation is one of the principal methods of deriving a perfective from an imperfective. The addition of a perfective prefix results, not in a change of *meaning*, but only in a change of *aspect*. Thus, both imperfective **писать** (письмо) and perfective **написать** (письмо) mean 'to write (a letter)', but the past, present, and future of **писать** (**я писал**, **пишу**, **буду писать** письмо) imply writing in progress ('I was writing, am writing, will be writing a letter') or repetition ('I used to write, write, will [often] write a letter'), while the past and future of perfective **написать** (**я написал**, **напишу** письмо) denote the completion of an act of writing in the past ('I wrote, have written, had written a letter) or intention to complete an act of writing in the future ('I will write, will have written a letter, will get a letter written').

(b) The commonest of the perfective prefixes is **по-**, which can express:

(i) a *completed* action or process:

Она покрасила стёны She **painted** the walls

Мы помыли машину We **washed** the car

(ii) an *instantaneous* action:

Он порезал палец He **cut** his finger

Я поблагодарил его I **thanked** him

- Note:** (i) In different contexts, the prefix **по-** (like some others) may imply different types of action. Thus, **Она посмотрела на меня** 'She looked at me' may be described as instantaneous, while **Она посмотрела фильм** 'She watched a film' denotes a completed action.
 (ii) For 'submeanings' of perfectives in **по-**, see page 115.

Other perfective prefixes

Other perfective prefixes include the following:

- **вз-/вс-**

Водá вскипéла The water **has boiled**

Он вспахáл поле He **ploughed up** the field

- **вы-** (always stressed as a perfective prefix, but always unstressed as an imperfective prefix except for imperfective **выглядеть** ‘to look, appear’):

Он выгладил рубáшку He **ironed** the shirt

Она выкупала детéй She **bathed** the children

Also **выпить** ‘to drink’, **вырасти** ‘to grow’, **выстрелить** ‘to shoot’, **выучить** ‘to learn’.

- **за-**

Он заплатíл за билеты He **paid** for the tickets

Also **зажáрить** ‘to fry’.

- **из-/ис-**

Я истра́тил свой дéньги I **have spent** (all) my money

- **на-** (with verbs that denote writing, drawing, and some others):

Она напíшет письмó She **will write** a letter

Ребёнок нарисовáл дом The child **drew** a house

Она научíла меня петь She **taught** me to sing

Also **накормíть** ‘to feed’, **напечáтать** ‘to print, type’.

- **под(o)-** is confined mainly to the verb **ждать** ‘to wait’:

Я подождú, покá он не придёт I **will wait** until he arrives

Perfective prefixes (continued)

- **при-** (with **гото́вить** ‘to prepare’, and some others):

Я пригото́влю ужин I will **prepare** dinner

Also **пригрози́ть** ‘to threaten’.

- **про-**

Она прочитáла всю кни́гу She **read** the whole book

Also **проголосо́вать** ‘to vote’.

- **раз-/рас-** express division, or the reversal of a process:

Они разде́лили иму́щество They **divided up** the property

Снег растáял The snow **melted**

Others include **разбуди́ть** ‘to awaken’.

- **с-**

Она споёт арию She **will sing** an aria

Я спрятал ключ I **hid** the key

Others include **свари́ть** ‘to boil’ (transitive), **свра́ть** ‘to tell a lie’, **сде́лать** ‘to do, make’, **съе́сть** ‘to eat’, **сыгра́ть** ‘to play’, **слома́ть** ‘to break’, **сшить** ‘to sew, make’.

- **y-** is used with verbs of perception, and some others:

Я услы́шал её гóлос I **heard** her voice

Он укрáл часы He **stole** a watch

Also **увíдеть** ‘to catch sight of’, **утону́ть** ‘to drown’ (intransitive).

A number of different prefixes (**вз-/вс-, из-/ис-, об-, раз-/рас-**) are used to denote the onset of an *emotion*:

Он взволнóвался He **got worried, excited**

Она испугáлась She **took fright**

Она обрадо́валась She **rejoiced**

Он рассердíлся на менé He **got angry** with me

! Note: Other perfective prefixes are used with isolated verbs: **о-** in **овдовéТЬ** ‘to be widowed’, **от-** in **отреагíровать** ‘to react’, **пере-** in **переночевáТЬ** ‘to spend the night’, etc.

Submeanings of the perfective prefixes за- and по-

Some prefixed perfectives in **за-** have a submeaning of **inception**: Он замолчал 'He fell silent', Она заболела 'She fell ill', Ребёнок заплакал 'The child burst into tears'. This also applies to a number of perfectives in **по-**: Он побежал 'He broke into a run'. In addition, many prefixed perfectives in **по-** have the submeaning of **short duration**: Он поспал 'He had a nap', Она посидела 'She sat for a while', etc. (see also page 126).

Imperfective and perfective aspects differentiated by conjugation

(a) A number of aspectual pairs comprise a *first-conjugation* imperfective in **-ать** or **-ять** and a *second-conjugation* perfective in **-ить** or **-еть**. Most of the verbs are prefixed:

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
включ-áть	включ-íть	'to switch on'
вступ-áть	вступ-íть	'to enter, join'
загор-áться	загор-éться	'to catch fire'
измен-я́ть	измен-íть	'to alter'
объясн-я́ть	объясн-íть	'to explain'
повтор-я́ть	повтор-íть	'to repeat'
сообщ-áть	сообщ-íть	'to report'

(b) In some cases, the perfective is stressed on the stem:

довер-áть	довéр-ить	'to entrust'
назнач-áть	назnáч-ить	'to appoint'
наруш-áть	нару́ш-ить	'to infringe'
улучш-áть	улúчш-ить	'to improve'

(c) A few unprefixed verbs also belong in the series:

брос-áть	брóс-ить	'to throw'
конч-áть	кóнч-ить	'to finish'
реш-áть	реsh-íть	'to decide'

Consonant mutation in the imperfective aspect

The following consonant mutations occur *regularly* in the imperfective aspect of aspectual pairs comprising first-conjugation imperfective and second-conjugation perfective:

<i>Mutation</i>	<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
б: бл	ослабить	ослаблять	'to weaken'
в: вл	удивить	удивлять	'to surprise'
д: ж	обидеть	обижать	'to offend'
д: жд	обсудить	обсуждать	'to discuss'
з: ж	возразить	возражать	'to object'
п: пл	скрепить	скреплять	'to staple'
с: ш	согласиться	соглашаться	'to agree'
ст: ск	пропустить	пропускать	'to miss'
ст: щ	простить	прощать	'to forgive'
т: ч	встретить	встречать	'to meet'
т: щ	защитить	защищать	'to protect'

Note: (a) the ст: ск alternation is confined to perfective *пустить*/imperfective *пускать* 'to let go' and its compounds.

(b) The п: пл mutation does not affect perfective *ступить*/imperfective *ступать* 'to step' and compounds.

(c) The mutations also affect the *first-person singular* of the **perfective verbs**: Я ослаблю дисциплину 'I will slacken discipline', Я удивлю его 'I will surprise him', Я обижу их 'I will offend them', Я возражу против этого 'I will object to this', Я скреплю бумаги 'I will staple the papers together', Я встречу гостей 'I will meet the guests', Я соглашусь на это 'I will agree to this', Я пропущу поезд 'I will miss the train', Я прощу ошибку 'I will forgive the mistake', Я защищу диссертацию 'I will defend my dissertation'.

(d) the first-person singular of *обсудить* 'to discuss' is *обсужу* 'I will discuss' (despite imperfective *обсуждать*), and this also applies to a number of other verbs with **д** in the perfective infinitive and **жд** in the imperfective infinitive.

Secondary imperfectives based on first-conjugation verbs

Most verbs have a ‘neutral’ perfective, that is to say, imperfective and perfective have the same *meaning*, e.g. **играть/сыграть** ‘to play’, but a different aspect. However, many verbs also take prefixes that change both their aspect (which changes to perfective) **and** their meaning. The new perfectives then acquire imperfectives through the insertion of a syllable. Thus, **проиграть** (a derivative of **играть** ‘to play’) means ‘to lose’, and its imperfective is formed by inserting the syllable **-ыв-** and shifting the stress back onto the stem, thus:

Root verb	Perfective compound	Secondary imperfective	Meaning
играть	проиграть	пройгрывать	‘to lose’

Likewise **подписа́ть** ‘to sign’ (a derivative of **писа́ть** ‘to write’), imperfective **подпи́сывать**, etc.

- ! Note: (a) the stem vowel **-о-** is usually replaced by **-а-** in the secondary imperfective: **зарабо́тать** ‘to earn’, imperfective **зараба́тывать**, and **-е-** by **-ё-**: **причеса́ть** ‘to comb’, imperfective **причёсыва́ть**.
 (b) many perfective compounds based on monosyllabic verbs form imperfectives with **-ва-**; **уби́ть** ‘to kill’, imperfective **убива́ть**. Others insert **-и-** or **-ы-**: **убра́ть** ‘to clear away’, imperfective **убира́ть**, **назва́ть** ‘to name’, imperfective **называ́ть**.

Secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs

These are formed in the same way as those derived from first-conjugation verbs (including stress shift and stem-vowel change **-о-** to **-а-**). The suffix **-ив-** is inserted into the perfective infinitive:

Root verb ‘to look’	Perfective compound	Secondary imperfective	Meaning
смотре́ть	осмотре́ть	осматрива́ть	‘to examine’

- ! Note: (a) secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs are affected by consonant mutation, for example: **расплати́ться** ‘to settle up’, imperfective **расплáчива́ться** (for other consonant changes, see page 116).
 (b) when two vowels appear in sequence in the perfective, e.g. **наклéйтъ** ‘to affix’, the secondary imperfective is formed with the suffix **-ва-**. Thus, the imperfective of **наклéйтъ** is **наклéиватъ**.

Perfectives in -нуть

(a) A number of imperfective verbs with the ending **-ать** (sometimes **-ять** or **-еть**) form their perfectives using the suffix **-ну-**. Many of the perfectives denote a single instantaneous action:

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
глядеть	глянуть	to glance
двигаться	двинуть	to move
засыпать	заснуть	to fall asleep
исчезать	исчезнуть	to disappear
касаться	коснуться	to touch
кричать	кликнуть	to shout
просыпаться	проснуться	to wake up
прыгать	прыгнуть	to jump
стучать	стукнуть	to bang
улыбаться	улыбнуться	to smile
хлопать	хлопнуть	to slam

(b) Others include **достигать/достигнуть** ‘to achieve’, **замерзать/замёрзнуть** ‘to freeze’ (intransitive), **кашлять/кашлянуть** ‘to cough’, **отдыхать/отдохнуть** ‘to relax’, **подчёркивать/подчеркнуть** ‘to underline’, **привыкать/привыкнуть** ‘to get used to’.

Irregular aspectual pairs

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
брать	взять	to take
говорить	сказать	to say
класть	положить	to place, put
ложиться	лечь	to lie down
пересаживаться	пересесть	to change vehicles
садиться	сесть	to sit down
становиться	стать	to become

I Functions of the verbal aspects

(a) The fundamental difference between the aspects (*see also page 111*) is that the imperfective is used to denote actions that are either:

- in progress: Он платил за билеты 'He was paying for the tickets'
- or repeated: Он всегда платил за билеты 'He always paid for the tickets', while the perfective denotes:
- a single completed action: Он заплатил за билеты 'He paid/has paid/had paid for the tickets'.

(b) As we have seen, the imperfective has a past, present, and future (e.g. он платил/платит/будет платить 'he was paying/pays/will be paying'), while the perfective has a past and future (e.g. он заплатил/заплатит 'he paid/will pay'), but *no* present.

(c) The perfective aspect is often *resultative*; compare the non-resultative *imperfective*:

Он подметал пол He **was sweeping** the floor (an action incomplete and *in progress*), and the resultative *perfective*:

Он подмёл пол He **has swept** the floor (result – the floor is clean)

(d) The perfective is thus said to move the action forward (e.g. Ему выдали визу 'They issued him with a visa' – so now he can buy a ticket, go to Russia, etc.), while the imperfective describes action in progress (e.g. Ему выдавали визу 'They were issuing him with a visa': the formalities were in process).

(e) Perfectives also have other functions

(i) Some denote the **beginning** of an action (*see also page 115*):

Она запоёт She will start singing

(ii) Others denote an **instantaneous** action:

Он чихнул He sneezed

(iii) Some (mainly prefixed **но-**, with no imperfective counterparts, *see also page 115*) denote an action of **short duration**:

Я постою здесь немножко I will stand here for a while

The present tense

(a) Only the *imperfective* aspect can be used in the present tense (a conjugated perfective verb has *future* meaning). Unlike English, which distinguishes actions in progress ('He **is putting on** his coat') from habitual actions ('He **puts on** his coat'), the *Russian* present tense can express either meaning. The difference between durative action and habitual action may be conveyed by context:

Сейчáс он надевáет пальтó He is putting on his coat **now**

Он всегдá надевáет пальтó He **always** puts on his coat

! Note: See pages 150–154 for the verbs of motion, which *do* distinguish between action in progress (Я **идú** в школу 'I **am on my way** to school'), and habitual and other types of action (Он **хóдит** в школу 'He **goes** to school').

(b) The present tense also:

(i) conveys facts:

Дон впадаёт в Азóвское мóре The Don **empties** into the Sea of Azov

(ii) is used to denote an action that began in the past and continues in the present (English uses the past continuous: 'have/has been -ing'):

Я рабóтаю здесь ужé два góда I **have been working** here for two years

Она ужé давнó живёт в Кíеве She **has been living** in Kiev for a long time

! Note: Use of the past tense here would correspond to the English *pluperfect* with 'had': **Она ужé давнó жилá** в Кíеве She **had been living** in Kiev for a long time

In a *negative* version of the construction with **давнó не**, the present tense may imply permanency and the past tense a temporary state:

Я давнó не ем мя́са I **have not eaten** meat for a long time (have given it up entirely)

Я давнó не ел мя́са I **have not eaten** meat for a long time (but may do so again)

The present tense (continued)

The present tense of the verb **быть** ‘to be’ is either:

(a) ‘understood’:

Я готóв/Она́ довóльна I am ready/She is pleased

or (b) replaced by a verb specific to a particular context:

Он слúжит в армии He is ('serves') in the army

Они́ учатся в университéте They are ('are studying') at university

Note: In definitions and more official contexts, the verb **являться** 'to be' is sometimes used (see also page 42): **Он является члéном профсоюза** He is a member of the TU

Есть 'is/are, there is/are' is very commonly used to emphasize existence or availability: **Есть билéты** There are tickets

Indirect or reported speech

In Russian, if the speaker's words were in the present tense, the present tense is used to report them. Thus, **Я не знаю** 'I don't know' is reported in Russian using the *present* tense (and in English using the *past*):

Он сказал, что не знает He said he **didn't know**

Similarly:

Я думал, что он понимáет её I thought he **understood her**

Он надеялся, что я забóчусь о ней He hoped I **was looking after her**

Я узнал, что она́ ищет сына I learnt she was **looking for her son**

The historic present

Like English, Russian has a *historic present*, which is used to make past occurrences more vivid:

В 1835 году Гóголь пишет <<Нос>> In 1835 Gogol **writes** The Nose

Future meaning

In some instances (see page 109), the present can be used with future meaning:

Зáвтра мы идём в гóсти

Tomorrow we **are going** visiting

Aspect in the past tense: the imperfective

(a) A function of the imperfective past is to denote that an action was in progress at a particular time:

Учитель проверял тетради The teacher **was marking** the exercise books

(b) The durative element of the action may be reinforced by an adverb of time such as **долго** ‘for a long time’:

Он **долго** брёлся He **took a long time** to shave

(c) A whole series of imperfectives can be used to describe a scene, with actions appearing in indeterminate order:

Вчера мы **отдыхали** в парке: **играли** в футбол, **слушали** радио Yesterday we **relaxed** in the park: **played** football, **listened** to the radio

(d) Imperfectives can also denote *concurrent* actions:

Она **рассказывала**, а я **слушал** She **narrated**, and I **listened**

(e) Imperfective and perfective can coexist in the same sentence, the imperfective denoting an action in progress, the perfective the completion of a process:

Мы **гуляли**, пока не **стемнело** We **walked** until it **grew dark**

(f) Conversely, a completed action (perfective) can be set against the background of an action in progress (imperfective):

Пока она **готовила** ужин, я **накрыл** на стол While she **was cooking** dinner, I **laid** the table

(g) Care must be taken in selecting the correct aspect in sentences with **когда** ‘when’, **в то время как** ‘while’, **после того (,) как** ‘after’, etc. Compare use of the imperfective for simultaneous actions in:

Когда он **прощался** с ней, он поцеловал её в лоб

When he **said goodbye** to her (i.e. *was saying* goodbye to her)
he kissed her on the forehead

and of the perfective for consecutive actions in:

Когда он **попрощался** с ней, он сел в машину и уехал

When he **had said goodbye** to her he *got into* his car and drove off

Aspect in the past tense: imperfective (continued)

Frequency

(a) The imperfective past also indicates frequency:

Он **обычно** задава́л много́го вопро́сов He used to ask many questions

Кажды́й раз, когдá он входи́л, все встава́ли Every time he came in everyone got up

(b) The idea of habitual action may be reinforced by an adverb or adverbial phrase (**часто** ‘often’, **чаще всегó** ‘more often than not’, **иногда** ‘sometimes’, **всегда** ‘always’, **обычно** ‘usually’, **раз в год** ‘once a year’, etc.):

Он всегда́ запирал дверь He always locked the door

Иногда́ она́ купа́лась в озере Sometimes she swam in the lake

Обычно он опаздывал Usually he was late

Они́ отмечали пра́здник раз в год They marked the festival once a year

(c) The *perfective* is used if an action is repeated a number of times in close succession:

Шофёр просигналил дважды The driver hooted twice

(d) When, however, the repeated actions are spaced out, with substantial intervals between the repeats, the imperfective must be used:

Я нéсколько раз перечитыва́л А́нну Ка́ренину I have re-read Anna Karenina several times

An action and its reverse

The imperfective past is also used to indicate that an action occurred and was then reversed or cancelled:

Кто́-то включал свет Someone has had the light on (but now it is off again)

Он надевал костю́м He put on the suit (and has now taken it off again)

Она уезжала на прошлой неделе She **went away** last week
 (and has now returned)

Я брал книгу в библиотеке I **took** a book out of the library (and have now returned it)

! **Note:** Use of *perfectives* here would mean, respectively, that the light has been switched on and is *still* on (Кто-то **включил** свет), that he has put on and *is still wearing* the suit (Он **надел** костюм), that she went away last week and is *still away* (Она **уехала** на прошлой неделе), and that I have not yet returned the library book (Я **взял** книгу в библиотеке).

Imminent events

The imperfective past is used to record an event that was about to take place:

Пароход отплывал в два часá The steamer **was due to sail** at two o'clock

Мы отправлялись в похóд We **were about to set out** on a hike

'Statement of fact'

The imperfective past is used to express a 'statement of fact'. In this type of construction, a question or statement appears in the vaguest of contexts, with no emphasis on completion or non-completion:

Вы читали Дётство? Да, читáла **Have you (ever) read Childhood?** Yes, I **have**

Вы встречали Мáшу? Да, кáжется, **встречáл** **Have you (ever) met Masha?** Yes, I believe I **have**

! **Note:** The use of the *perfective* in such contexts would imply that, for example, you were *told to read* *Childhood* and *ought to have read* it, alternatively the speaker would like to have it if you have finished with it (Вы **прочитáли Дётство?** Did you **read/have you finished** *Childhood*?); or that you were *expected to* or *had agreed to* meet Masha and *should have met* her (Вы **встрéтили** Мáшу? Did you **meet** Masha?).

The perfective past

Completed actions or processes

(a) The perfective past is used to denote the completion of an action or process. A *result* is often implied (*see also page 111*):

Оні обмениáлись адресáми They **exchanged** addresses (as a *result*, they have each other's address, can keep in touch, etc.)

Он вýмыл посúду He **washed** the dishes (as a *result*, they are clean)

Он поúжинал He **dined** (as a *result*, he is no longer hungry)

(b) Perfectives may appear as a succession of completed actions or processes:

Когда́ дождь кончилsя, мы пошлí гулять When the rain **stopped** we **went** for a walk

Как тóлько он поднялsя на трибúну, раздалиsь аплодисмéнты As soon as he **mounted** the rostrum, applause **rang out**

Note: A perfective indicating successful completion may be preceded by imperfectives that denote *attempts* to complete:

Он поступал в университét и, кáжется, **поступил** He applied for university and apparently got in

Она сдавáла и сдалá зачёт She **took** and passed the test

Он решал и наконéц **решил** кроссворд He tackled and finally **solved** the crossword

Instantaneous actions

Some perfectives, mainly with the prefixes **вз-/вс-**, **раз-/рас-**, or **у-**, or the suffix **-ну-** (*see page 118*), denote instantaneous actions, often introduced by adverbs such as **вдруг** 'suddenly', **срáзу** 'all at once', **мгновéнно** 'instantly':

Срáзу вспýхнула забастóвка A strike **flared up** all at once

Вдруг я увиðел сигна́л Suddenly I **caught sight of** the signal

Мгновéнно раздалиsя вýстрел Instantly a shot **rang out**

Он кáшлянул He **gave** a cough

Actions of short duration

A number of verbs, mainly prefixed **по-** and with no imperfectives, denote actions of short duration, sometimes reinforced by the adverb **немного** ‘a little’ (*see also page 119*):

Она поговорила со мной She had a chat with me

Мы поиграли немножко в шахматы We played chess for a while

Она почитала She read for a while

! Note: Compare the neutral perfective **прочитать**, which denotes completion of an action: **Она прочитала рассказ** She read the story

Inceptive verbs

A number of perfective verbs prefixed **за-**, and a few in **по-**, denote the *beginning* of an action or process (*see also page 119*):

заболеть to fall ill

запеть to start singing

зазвонить to start ringing

почувствовать (боль) to start feeling (pain)

полюбить to take a liking to

Many inceptive perfectives have no imperfective. However, **заболеть** ‘to fall ill’ has the secondary imperfective **заболевать** and **запеть** ‘to start singing’ the secondary imperfective **запевать**.

Aspect in the negative past: imperfective and perfective

The negated *imperfective* past can describe:

- (a) a continuous negative state, sometimes reinforced by durative adverbs that automatically produce imperfectives, such as **всё** 'still' or **долго** 'for a long time':

Он всё не звонил He still **didn't phone**

Она долго не реагировала She took a long time **to react**

- (b) repeated occurrences or non-occurrences, sometimes reinforced by frequentative adverbs:

Он часто не отвечал He often **didn't answer**

Она обычно не жаловалась She **didn't usually complain**

Use of aspect in denoting a single negated occurrence

- (a) In describing a single occurrence, a negated *imperfective* expresses a categorical denial that the action took place at all:

Я никакого письма не получал I **didn't receive** any letter at all

- (b) The negated *perfective* indicates:

(i) that the action *did* take place but **was not completed**:

Дом ещё не построили They **haven't finished building** the house

(ii) that the action was *expected* or *might* have been expected to take place, but did not:

Я не взял фотоаппарат в дорогу I **didn't take** my camera on the trip (even though I usually do)

Note: that *imperfective* usage: **Я не брал фотоаппарат** 'I **didn't take** the camera' simply negates the action.

(iii) that the action has not taken place but, again, *is expected to*:

Она ещё не вернулась She **hasn't yet returned**

Note: that *imperfective* usage: **Она совсем не возвращалась** 'She **did not return at all**' expresses a categorial denial that the action took place.

Aspect in the future

A future action in progress

The imperfective is used to denote a future action in progress:

Что вы будете делать завтра вечером? What **will you be doing tomorrow evening?**

Я буду смотреть телевизор I **will be watching** television

! Note: A perfective answer would also be possible (implying a completed action): **Мы поедем за город** 'We **are going to drive** into the country'.

Repeated actions

The imperfective is used to denote future repeated actions:

Я всегда буду отдыхать в Сочи I **will always holiday** in Sochi

Intention to complete an action

(a) The perfective is used to denote intention to complete an action:

Я напишу сочинение I **will write** the essay

(b) Perfectives may appear in sequence, each action following completion of the previous action:

Позавтракаю и пойду на работу I **will have breakfast and go to work**

Use of either aspect in a future context

(a) Sometimes either aspect is possible in a future context, the imperfective emphasizing *the progress of the action*:

Летом мы будем делать ремонт в доме In the summer we **will be carrying out** repairs in the house

while the perfective anticipates *successful completion*:

Летом мы сделаем ремонт в доме In the summer we **will carry out** repairs in the house

(b) Different aspects can co-exist in the same sentence, the perfective expressing completion, the imperfective the durative nature of an action:

Поужинаю, потом буду смотреть телевизор I **will have supper and then watch** television

Other future usage: the 'logical' future

Russian uses the future tense after **когда** 'when', **как только** 'as soon as', **прежде(,) чем** 'before', **если** 'if', **пока не** 'until', when future action is indicated (unlike English, which uses the *present* tense):

Когда он кончит, поблагодарй его When he **finishes**, thank him

Как только узнаю, скажу вам As soon as I **hear** I'll tell you

Прежде чем он подпишется, он просмотрит контракт Before he **signs** he will look through the contract

Если будешь покупать цветы, купи и мне If you **are buying** flowers, buy some for me too

Я подожду, пока она не придёт I'll wait until she **arrives**

The future in indirect or reported speech

The future tense is used to report a statement that was itself expressed in future terms. Thus, the statements **Я закрою** дверь 'I will close the door' and **Я буду переписываться** с ним 'I will correspond with him' are reported using the *future*:

Он сказал, что закроет дверь He said he **would close** the door

Она сказала, что будет переписываться с ним She said she **would correspond** with him

Note: If two or more future clauses are to be reported, English uses 'would' in reporting the first, and subsequently switches to the past tense. Russian, however, used the future in both cases. Thus, the statement **Я переведу** статью, если вы **пришлете** её 'I will translate the article if you **send** it' is reported using the future of *both* verbs:

Он сказал, что переведёт статью, если я **пришлю** её

He said he **would translate** the article, if I **sent** it (literally 'He said he **will translate** the article if I **will send** it')

Polite requests

The *negative perfective* future is sometimes used in polite requests:

Простите, вы не подвинетесь немножко? Excuse me, **could** you **move over** a bit?

Aspect in the imperative

The imperfective imperative is used to issue:

(a) a general injunction:

Соблюдай прáвила! *Observe* the rules!

(b) a frequentative instruction:

Пéйте молокó кáждый день! *Drink* milk every day!

Note: The *perfective* may be used where an action is to be repeated a number of times in swift succession:

Повторí éтот звук нéсколько раз! *Repeat* this sound several times!

(c) a request to continue an action:

Продолжáйте, я вас слúшаю! *Go on*, I'm listening!

The imperative in the context of a single action

(a) In the context of a single action, the *perfective* is used to order implementation:

Переведíте éту фráзу! *Translate* this phrase!

and the *imperfective* to order non-implementation:

Не переводíте éту фráзу! *Don't translate* this phrase!

(b) The imperfective is also used:

(i) to express an *invitation* to guests on social occasions:

Заходíте! 'Come in!', **Садíтесь!** 'Sit down!', **Раздевáйтесь!**

'Take off your hat and coat!'

(ii) in concurring with a request, e.g.: **Мóжно повéсить пальто!**

'May I hang up my coat?' **Вéшайте, вéшайте!** 'Hang it up by all means!' or issuing a reminder: **Тебé нúжно позвонíть отцу.**

Звонí скорéй! 'You've got to ring Dad. Hurry up and **ring!**'

! **Note:** The negative *perfective* is used to issue warnings against potentially harmful behaviour, combined with a concern that the action might occur by mistake: **Не упадíте!** 'Mind you don't fall!', **Не споткнýтесь!** 'Mind you don't trip!', **Не забúдьте** 'Mind you don't forget!'. The imperative may be preceded by **смотри!**: **Смотри, не пролéй вóду!** 'Mind you don't spill the water!'

Aspect in the infinitive

The *imperfective* infinitive is used to denote

(a) continuous actions:

Ей нужно будет отдыхать месяц She will need **to rest** for a month

(b) repeated actions:

Стоит проверять зрение раз в год It is worth **having** your eyes **checked** annually

Note: When **всегда** ‘always’ or another frequentative adverb qualifies a verb or short adjective, however, the frequentative element is absorbed by the verb or adjective and the following infinitive may be in the *perfective* aspect:

Она всегда готова помочь She is always ready **to help**

Я всё забываю принести фотографии I keep on forgetting **to bring** the photographs

Completed actions

(a) The perfective infinitive is used to denote a single completed action:

Он решил вызвать врача He decided **to call out** the doctor

(b) The imperfective infinitive is used, however, if **не** appears between the auxiliary verb and the infinitive:

Он решил не вызывать врача He decided **not to call out** the doctor

(c) Since the underlying meaning of **раздумывать/раздумать** is ‘to decide not to’ it takes an *imperfective* infinitive:

Она раздумала танцевать She changed her mind about **dancing** (decided not to dance)

(d) The imperfective infinitive is also used

(i) after **не нужно** ‘there is no need to’ and **не надо** ‘you mustn’t, you shouldn’t’, and other words that imply *inadvisability*:

Не нужно спрашивать There is no need **to ask**

Не надо наливать ему водку You shouldn’t **pour** him vodka

Нет смысла останавливаться There’s no point in **stopping**

(ii) to denote habitual actions, learned skills, (dis)inclinations, etc.:

Он научился стрелять He learnt **to shoot**

Она привыкла ждать She has got used to **waiting**

Он умеет водить машину He knows how **to drive a car**

(iii) after verbs that denote beginning, continuing, or finishing:

Она началá гладить бельё She began **to iron** the linen

Я продолжал переводить текст I continued **to translate** the text

Он перестал жаловаться He has stopped **complaining**

Aspect of the infinitive with words of necessity, obligation

(a) **Мочь** ‘to be able’ combines with the *perfective* aspect to denote completion of a single action:

Ты можешь взять фотоаппарат You can **take** the camera while **мочь не** takes the *perfective* in the meaning ‘may/might not’ and the *imperfective* in the meaning ‘need/needs not’:

Он может не приехать He may/might **not come**

Он может не вставать He need **not get up**

(b) **Должен/должна/должно/должны** ‘must, should, ought to, is/are supposed to’ also take the *perfective* in denoting anticipation of the completion of a single action:

Он должен встретить её He is supposed **to meet** her

while **не должен** takes the *perfective* in the meaning ‘is unlikely to’ and the *imperfective* in the meaning ‘not obliged to’:

Она не должна простудиться She shouldn’t **catch cold** (she only got her feet wet)

Она не должна встречать его She doesn’t have **to meet** him (if she doesn’t want to)

(c) **Нельзя** takes the *perfective* in the meaning ‘it is impossible’ and the *imperfective* in the meaning ‘you’re not allowed to’:

Отсюда нельзя позвонить You can’t **ring** from here (it is impossible, there is no phone)

Отсюда нельзя звонить You’re not allowed **to ring** from here (it is forbidden)

Aspect in the infinitive (conclusion)

(a) With **порá** 'it is time to':

Порá 'it is time to' combines with the *imperfective* infinitive:

Порá **закáнчивать** рабóту It is time **to finish** work

In the meaning 'it is desirable to' it takes the *perfective* infinitive:

Порá **покóнчить** с éтим злом It is time **to have done** with this evil

(b) With verbs of motion:

(i) The *imperfective* infinitive is the norm:

Он пошёл **собирáться** He went off **to pack his things**

Пойдём **накрýвáть** на стол Let's go and **lay** the table

(ii) The *perfective* is possible, however, if there is special emphasis on completion of an action: Он пошёл в магазíн **купítъ** книгу 'He went to the shop **to buy** a book' (compare use of the *imperfective* infinitive in Он пошёл **покупáть** подáрки 'He went to buy some presents', with emphasis on a *series of activities*).

(iii) The *perfective* infinitive after verbs of motion is also common with actions of short duration in **но-**:

Она вышла **посидéть** на вóздухе She went out to **sit** in the open air **for a while**

(c) With **не хотéть** 'not to want to':

(i) The *imperfective* infinitive is widely used after **не хотéть**:

Я не хотéл переодевáться I didn't want **to change my clothes**

especially with emphatic adverbs:

Я совсéм не хочу ложíться I have no wish whatsoever **to go to bed**

(ii) However, the *perfective* is usual when an undesirable action has taken place *unintentionally*:

Я не хотéл вас оскорбíть I didn't mean **to insult** you

and when **не** is not *strictly* negative:

Ты не хочешь принять участие? Wouldn't you [= would you] like **to take part?**

The conditional mood

(a) An English conditional consists of a main, ‘**would**’ clause and an ‘**if**’ clause (‘**if**’ + the past tense):

I **would** go if I had time

(b) The conditional describes a situation that does not exist (‘I would go’ implies that I **cannot** go’, ‘if I had time’ implies that I **do not** have time), but that *could* exist given the right conditions.

(c) Use of the past tense in the English conditional is purely conventional: reference is not really to the past. Special forms are used by some speakers, e.g. ‘if I were you’. The conditional can also be used with pluperfect meaning:

I **would** have gone if I had had time

(d) The Russian conditional construction is similar to the English. It comprises a main clause (past tense + **бы**):

Я поехал бы I *would go*

and an ‘**if**’ clause (**если бы** + past tense):

если бы у меня было время if I *had time*

Note: (a) The main clause may precede the **если** clause, or vice versa.

(b) A comma appears between the two clauses: Я поехал бы, **если бы у меня было время** ‘I *would go if I had time*’.

(c) The same construction is used in the pluperfect, e.g. **Если бы у меня была машина, я отвёз бы вас на вокзал** ‘If I *had a car I would take you to the station*’ or ‘*If I had had a car I would have taken you to the station*’.

(e) The conditional is thus used in an *unreal* situation that might, however, be reversed by a change in circumstances:

Если бы я был начальником, я дал бы вам прибавку к зарплате If I *were the boss I would give you a rise*

Note: (i) The conjunction **если** ‘if’ can appear in other, non-conditional, types of construction, e.g. with a finite future tense: **Если ты его увидишь, скажи ему, что я звонил** ‘If you see him, tell him I rang’.

(ii) ‘Would’ is not always the marker of a conditional construction: it also appears in reported speech: ‘He promised he **would** help’ Он обещал, что **поможет** (see page 129) and in past habitual (imperfective) contexts: ‘He **would** always be late’ Он всегда опаздывал (see also page 123).

The subjunctive mood

(a) The verb **хотéть** ‘to want’ is followed by an infinitive when the subject does not change:

Я хочу́ получить ви́зу I want **to get** a visa.

(b) When the subject does change, however, the *subjunctive* is used. This involves replacement of the infinitive by **чтóбы** + the past tense (a comma appears between **хотéть** and **чтóбы**):

Я хочу́, чтóбы он полу́чил ви́зу I want **him to get** a visa

(c) As in the conditional (see page 134), use of the past tense is purely conventional: the construction bears no relation to the past.

(d) Other tenses of **хотéть** can be used:

Я хотéл/захочу́, чтóбы он полу́чил ви́зу I wanted/will want him to get a visa

(e) **Хотéть** can be replaced by verbs and other words that denote wish or desire: **трéбовать/по-** ‘to demand’, **за то/прóтив тогó** ‘in favour of/against’, **настáивать/настóять** ‘to insist’, **вáжно** ‘it is important’, etc. English equivalents use constructions other than the ‘accusative and infinitive’ construction used with ‘to want’ (I want **him to vote**):

Я трéбую, чтóбы он согла́сился I demand he should consent
Онá за то, чтóбы все уча́ствовали She is in favour of everyone participating

Он настóял (на том), чтóбы мы говорíли по-рúсски He insisted we (should) speak Russian

Вáжно, чтóбы лю́ди не забы́ли о войнé It is important that people should not forget about the war

Note: The **чтóбы** construction is also used with **говорíть/сказáть** ‘to say, tell’: **Онá сказáла, чтóбы я не беспокóился** ‘She said I shouldn’t worry’.

The subjunctive of purpose

(a) In a variant of the subjunctive construction, action is taken to achieve a desired result. Resolve is expressed in a number of set phrases: **дёлать всё, чтобы** 'to do everything to ensure that', **следить за тем, чтобы** 'to see to it that', **добиваться того, чтобы** 'to try to get (someone to do something)':

Врач дёлает всё, чтобы больной поправился The doctor is doing all she can to ensure that the patient recovers

Она следит за тем, чтобы дети не голодали She sees to it that the children do not go hungry

Мы добиваемся того, чтобы все страны подписали договор We are trying to get all countries to sign the treaty

(b) The set phrases (дёлать всё, чтобы, etc.) may be replaced by virtually any action, the purpose of which is expressed by the second clause:

Он купил компьютер, чтобы его сын мог пользоваться

Интернетом He bought a computer so that his son can use the Internet

Закрой дверь, чтобы шум не мешал отцу работать Close the door, so that the noise does not stop father working

Она надела свитер на ребёнка, чтобы он не простудился She put a sweater on the child, so that he should not catch a cold

! Note: If the subject does not change, **чтобы** + *infinitive* is used: **Она надела свитер, чтобы не простудиться** 'She put on a sweater so as not to catch cold'.

The subjunctive of hypothesis

The particle **бы** + past tense is used in hypothetical, unreal situations:

Нет ни одной страны, где бы он не побывал There is not a single country where he has not spent some time

Concessive constructions

Interrogative pronouns and adverbs (кто, что, где, кудá, etc.) + **бы ни** + past tense render English 'whoever', 'whenever', 'however', etc.

Что бы он ни делал, он никогда не забывал своих родителей Whatever he did, he never forgot his parents

Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verbs conjugate like non-reflexive verbs, but with the ending **-ся** added to forms ending in a consonant or **-й**, and **-сь** to forms ending a vowel, e.g. **купаться** 'to bathe (oneself)':

Present tense	я купаюсь	ты купаешься	он купается
	мы купаёмся	вы купаетесь	они купаются
Imperative	купайся!	купайтесь!	
Past tense	он купался	она купалась	оно купалось
			они купались

Note: **-сь** is added to the imperative ending **-и**: **Вернись!** 'Return!' 

'True' reflexives

'True' reflexives (e.g. **мыться** 'to wash [oneself]') are verbs in which the subject of the verb and the reflexive ending (**-ся/-сь**) refer to the same person, that is to say, the subject of the verb performs the action on himself/herself. Most of these verbs refer to preparation, dressing, washing, etc.:

- бриться/по-** to shave (oneself)
- готовиться/при-** to prepare (oneself)
- купаться/вы-, ис-** to bathe (oneself)
- мыться/вы-, по-** to wash (oneself)
- одеваться/одеться** to get dressed
- переодеваться/переодеться** to get changed
- причёсываться/причесаться** to do one's hair (or have it done)
- раздеваться/раздеться** to get undressed

Note: (a) English is usually a poor guide to Russian usage, since it hardly ever uses the reflexive particle 'self' with such verbs except for emphasis, e.g. 'She dresses herself' (of a small child).

(b) All the above verbs can be used transitively, *without* a reflexive ending, compare **Она купает ребёнка** 'She is bathing the child' and **Она купается** 'She is bathing (herself)'.

(c) Other true reflexives include **ложиться** 'to lie down' and **садиться** 'to sit down'.

Reciprocal meanings of reflexive verbs

Some reflexive verbs denote that two or more people are participating in a reciprocal action, thus:

Мы часто встречаемся We often **meet** (each member of the group meets the rest)

Other reciprocals include:

видеться/у- to see each other

мириться/по- to make it up

обниматься/обняться to embrace (each other)

объединяться/объединиться to unite (together)

ругаться/по- to quarrel

собираться/собраться to gather (together)

целоваться/по- to kiss (each other)

Note: (a) English is, again, not a reliable guide to Russian usage, since English reciprocal verbs normally omit 'each other' or 'one another': **Оні поцеловались** 'They kissed' ('each other' understood).

(b) all the verbs in the group can be used transitively, without the reflexive ending:

Он поцеловал девушки He **kissed** the girl (compare reciprocal)

Оні поцеловались They kissed (each other))

(c) Some verbs express reciprocal meanings through the pronoun **друг друга** 'each other': **Оні любят друг друга** 'They love each other', **Мы верим друг другу** 'We believe each other'.

Verbs which are only formally reflexive

A number of verbs have reflexive endings but no discernible reflexive meaning: **беспокойтесь/по-** 'to be worried', **бояться** 'to fear', **волноваться/вз-** 'to get excited', **гордиться** 'to be proud', **любоваться/по-** 'to admire', **надеяться/по-** 'to hope', **нравиться/по-** 'to please', **признаваться/признаться** 'to confess', **пытаться/по-** 'to try', **радоваться/об-** 'to rejoice', **смеяться** 'to laugh', **сомневаться** 'to doubt', **удивляться/удивиться** 'to be surprised', **улыбаться**, **улыбнуться**, to 'smile'.

Intransitive reflexive verbs

(a) Many transitive verbs can be made *intransitive* by the addition of a reflexive ending. Compare transitive **кончать/кóнчить** 'to end':

Он кончает работу He **finishes** work

(where accusative **работу** is the object of **кончает**), and:

Работа кончается Work **ends**

(where nominative **работа** 'work' has become the grammatical subject of **кончается** 'ends').

(b) Other reflexive intransitives include: начинáться/начáться 'to begin' (Урóк начинáется 'The lesson begins'), продолжáться 'to continue' (Дождь продолжáется 'The rain continues'), увеличíваться/увеличиться 'to increase' (Дохóд увеличíвается 'Revenue increases'), ухудшáться/ухудшиться 'to deteriorate' (Ситуáция ухудшилась 'The situation has deteriorated'), открывáться/открыться 'to open' (Магазíн открывáется 'The shop opens').

Passive reflexive verbs

Passive verbs can also be created by adding reflexive endings to transitive verbs. However, unlike reflexive intransitive verbs:

(a) Generally speaking, only *imperfective* verbs can function as passives, e.g. from **запрещáть** 'to ban':

Курить запрещáется Smoking is **forbidden**

(b) Agent words appear in the *instrumental* case (this does not occur with reflexive intransitives):

Дом стрóится рабóчими The house **is being built** by workers

(c) the subject of a reflexive passive can be *animate*:

Дирéктор назначáется комíссией The director **is appointed** by a commission

! Note: Verbs that do not take the *accusative case* cannot function as either reflexive transitives or reflexive passives. Thus, 'We are helped' is rendered as **Нам помогáют** ('They help us').

Impersonal constructions

Impersonal constructions occur in the following contexts:

(a) references to the weather or the environment:

Стемнёло It grew dark

Осенью светаёт поздно Dawn comes late in autumn

(b) references to personal well-being, indisposition, inclination. The person appears in the accusative case in some phrases, in the dative in others:

Его тошнит He feels sick

Ей хочется спать She feels sleepy

Мне повезло I am in luck

Нам удалось победить We succeeded in winning

Вам придётся подождать You will have to wait

(c) references to an external, natural force:

Дом ударило молнией The house was struck by lightning

(d) with the second-person singular of a verb (English ‘one’, colloquially ‘you’), usually without the pronoun ты:

Никогда не знаешь, к чему он клонит You never know (one never knows) what he is getting at

(e) with the third-person plural of a verb (without the pronoun они), sometimes identifying with authority or officialdom:

Просьт не курить No smoking

otherwise appearing in set formulas:

Как вас зовут? What's your name?

Говорят, что он погиб They say he has perished

(f) Sometimes, where the subject is clearly singular, use of the third-person plural is purely conventional:

Меня разбудили на рассвете I was awakened at dawn

Тебя просят к телефону You are wanted on the phone

Participles

The present active participle

Formation

The present active participle is formed from the third-person plural of *imperfective* verbs. Final **-т** is replaced by masculine **-щий**, feminine **-щая**, neuter **-шее**, and plural **-щие**:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>3rd-person plural</i>	<i>Participle (masculine)</i>
знатъ 'to know'	знаю-т	знаю-щий
сидѣть 'to sit'	сидя-т	сидя-щий
вести 'to lead'	веду-т	веду-щий

Participles from reflexive verbs take the ending **-ся**:

брѣться 'to shave' брѣю-тсѧ брѣющ-ийся

Stress in participles from first-conjugation verbs is as in the third-person plural:

пишать 'to write' пишу-т пишущий

and from second-conjugation verbs, as in the infinitive:

смотретьеть 'to look' смотря-т смотрящий



Note: Exceptions include **любящий** from **любить** 'to love'.

Usage

The present participle declines like **общий** 'common' (see page 47).

(a) As a single participle it precedes the noun it refers to, agreeing with it in gender, number, and case:

Зал полон читающих студентов The hall is full of reading students

(b) In a participial construction it replaces **который** + present tense and can either (i) follow or (ii) precede the noun:

(i) Он подходит к жёнщине, стоящей (=, которая стоит) в углу

(ii) Он подходит к стоящей в углу жёнщине

He goes up to the woman (who is) standing in the corner



Note: Some participles also function as adjectives: **текущие события** 'current events', others as nouns: **начинающий** 'beginner'.

The past active participle

(a) The past active participle is formed by replacing the masculine past tense **-л** of imperfective and perfective verbs by **-вший**, **-вшая**, **-вшее**, and **-вшие**. Thus, the participle (masculine) from читáть/прочитáть ‘to read’ is formed:

Infinitive	Past tense	Participle
(про)читáть	(про)читá-л	(про)читá-вший

Participles from reflexive verbs take the ending **-ся**: боявшийся from бояться ‘to fear’.

(b) If there is no **-л** in the masculine past tense of a verb, **-ший**, **-шая**, **-шша**, **-шие** are added to the masculine past (with some exceptions, such as исчезнувший from исчезнуть ‘to disappear’). Thus, the participle from зажéчь ‘to ignite’ is formed:

зажéчь зажёг зажёг-ший

(c) The past active participle declines like хороший ‘good’ (see page 47). It replaces **котóрый** + the past tense, is preceded by a comma:

дом, находившийся (= , котóрый находился) в центре города
the house (which was) situated in the town centre

and agrees with the noun it refers to in gender, number, and case:

Я читáю книгу, получившую (= , котóрая получила) приз
I am reading the book that won a prize

The imperfective passive participle

(a) The imperfective passive participle is formed by adding adjectival endings to the *first-person plural* of an **imperfective transitive verb**. Thus, the participle (masculine) from исполнить ‘to perform’ is formed:

Infinitive	First-person plural	Participle
исполнять	исполня-ем	исполняем-ый

(b) The participle declines like белый ‘white’ (see page 44) and replaces an *accusative relative pronoun* and an imperfective transitive verb, agreeing with the noun it refers to in gender, case, and number:

Я интересуюсь темой, обсуждаемой (= , котóрую обсуждают or , котóрая обсуждается) в Думе I am interested in the subject which they are discussing or which is being discussed in the Duma

The perfective passive participle (short form)

(a) The perfective passive participle is formed from perfective *transitive* verbs. The masculine *short-form* participle from most infinitives in **-аты/-ять** is made by replacing **-аты/-ять** by **-ан, -ана, -ано, -аны/-ян, -яна, -яно, -яны**, thus, from **прочитать** ‘to read’ and **потерять** ‘to lose’:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

прочитать	прочитан	потерять	потерян
-----------	----------	----------	---------

(b) The stress falls on the syllable preceding **-ан/-ян** (except for monosyllabic **дан** from **дать** ‘to give’ (feminine **дана**, neuter **дано**, plural **даны**)).

(c) The participle derives from *second-conjugation* infinitives in **-иты/-еть** by replacing **-иты/-еть** by **-ён, -енá, -енó, -ены** if the conjugation has *end stress* throughout, and by **-ен, -ена, -ено, -ены** if it has *fixed stem stress* or *mobile stress*):

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Participle</i>
окружить ‘to surround’	окружу́, -ужи́шь	окружён, -á, -ó, -ý
нарушить ‘to disrupt’	нарúшу, -ушишь	нару́шен, -а, -о, -ы
отложить ‘to postpone’	отложу́, -ожишь	отло́жен, -а, -о, -ы

(d) Verbs in **-иты/-еть** undergo consonant change:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Participle</i>
употребить	to use	употреблён
оставить	to leave	остáвлен
посадить	to plant	посажен
победить	to win	побеждён
выразить	to express	выражен
оформить	to design the layout of	оформлен
скрепить	to staple	скреплён
бросить	to throw	брóшен
очистить	to clean	очищен
отметить	to mark	отмéчен
запретить	to forbid	запрещён

The perfective passive participle (short form) (continued)

Participles from verbs in -ти and -чъ

These verbs form the participle by replacing third-person singular -т by -н, thus, the participles from спасти 'to save' and зажечь 'to ignite' are as follows:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Third-person singular</i>	<i>Participle</i>
спасти	спас-ёт	спас-ён, -á, -ó, -ы
зажечь	зажж-ёт	зажжён -á, -ó, -ы

! Note: the participles укрáден from укрáсть 'to steal', съéден from съéсть 'to eat', and наýден from наýти 'to find'.

Participles in -т

Perfective transitive verbs in -оть, -ыть, -уть, -ереть, compounds of бить 'to strike', вить 'to twine', лить 'to pour', пить 'to drink', and шить 'to sew', compounds of -нять and деть 'to put', and other verbs that take -м- or -н- in conjugation, also выбрить 'to shave' have participles in -т. The masculine participle is formed by removing -ь from the infinitive, while -а, -о, and -ы are added to form the feminine, neuter, and plural:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Participle</i>
проколóть	to puncture	прокóлот, -а, -о, -ы
закры́ть	to close	закрыт, -а, -о, -ы
трóнуть	to touch	трóнут, -а, -о, -ы
отперéть	to unlock	отпérт, -а, -о, -ы
убить	to kill	убит, -а, -о, -ы
принять	to accept	принят, -а, -о, -ы
одéть	to dress	одéт, -а, -о, -ы

! Note: (i) stress shift in some participles.

(ii) loss of the second -е- of the infinitive in отпérт, отпérтá, отпérто, отпérты from отперéть 'to unlock'.

Functions of the short form perfective passive participle

The short-form perfective passive participle is a predicative form and denotes:

(a) a recently-completed action:

Урожай убран The harvest **has been gathered** in

Его сын арестован His son **has been arrested**

Проблема решена The problem **has been solved**

Объявлена забастовка A strike **has been called**

Приняты нужные меры The necessary measures **have been taken**

- ! Note: (i) The participle may follow or precede the noun.
- ! (ii) The agent of the action appears in the instrumental case: Город захвачен **нашими войсками** The city has been seized **by our troops**.

(b) a state or condition:

Дверь закрыта The door **is closed**

Мы заняты We **are busy**

Города связаны дорогой The towns **are linked** by a road

Письмо подписано отцом The letter is signed **by father**

Note: Forms of the verb **быть** 'to be' also combine with the participle:

Ошибка была замечена The mistake **was noticed** (or **had been noticed**)

Книга будет издана The book **will be published** (or **will have been published**)

Торт был бы испечён The cake **would be baked** (or **would have been baked**)

The long form of the perfective passive participle

Formation

The long form of the perfective passive participle derives from the short form *masculine* in **-н** by the addition of **-ный**, **-ная**, **-ное**, **-ные**:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Short form (masc.)</i>	<i>Long form (masc.)</i>
сделать 'to do'	сделан	сделан-ный

and from the short-form masculine in **-т** by adding the adjectival endings **-ый**, **-ая**, **-ое**, **-ые**:

поднять 'to raise'	поднят	поднят-ый
--------------------	--------	-----------

The long-form perfective passive participle declines like **бёлый** 'white', *see page 44*).

Functions of the long form

(a) The participle can function as an attributive adjective, agreeing with the noun in gender, case, and number and preceding the noun it qualifies:

Вот один из **потерянных** ключей Here is one of the **lost** keys
Он надел **вышитую** рубашку He put on an **embroidered** shirt

(b) As part of a participial construction, it may

(i) follow the noun, separated from it by a comma:

Мы говорим о письме, **полученном** сегодня утром We are talking about the letter (**which was**) **received** this morning
Она читала статью, **переведённую** с английского She was reading the article (**which had been**) **translated** from English

(ii) precede the noun, together with circumstantial detail dependent on the participle:

Все говорили о **запущенном** на околоземную орбиту спутнике Everyone was talking about the **satellite** launched into the Earth's orbit

Мы довольны **принятыми** правительством мерами We are pleased with the **measures taken** by the government

The gerund (verbal adverb)

The imperfective gerund: formation

The imperfective gerund is formed by replacing the final two letters of the *third-person plural* of a verb by -я (-а after ж, ч, ш, or щ):

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Third-person plural</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
играть 'to play'	игrá-ют	игrá-я
жевáть 'to chew'	жу-ю́т	жу-́я
вести 'to lead'	вед-у́т	вед-́я
искáть 'to seek'	ищ-ут	ищ-́я
курить 'to smoke'	кур-я́т	кур-́я
кричáть 'to shout'	крич-áт	крич-́я

Note: Stress is as in the first-person singular:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>First-person singular</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
держáть 'to hold'	держ-́у	держ-́я

Exceptions include (a) глядя from глядеть 'to look', лёжа from лежáть 'to lie', сидя from сидéть 'to sit', and стоя from стоять 'to stand' (b) давáть 'to give' and compounds of -давáть, -ставáть, and -знавáть derive their gerunds from the *infinitive*:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Gerund</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
давáть 'to give'	давáя	вставáть 'to get up'	вставáя

Быть 'to be', has the gerund бúдучи.

! **Note:** (a) Gerunds are invariable.

(b) Many common verbs have no gerunds: all verbs in -чъ, also бежáть 'to run', быть 'to strike', есть 'to eat', ехáть 'to travel', ждать 'to wait for', петь 'to sing', писáть 'to write', хотéть 'to want', etc. Instead, an alternative construction must be used or a synonym found (e.g. ожидáть 'to wait for, expect', gerund ожидáя, желáть 'to want, wish', gerund желáя).

Functions of the imperfective gerund

The imperfective gerund describes an action that runs parallel to the action of the main verb (Он сидит, думая 'He sits thinking') or is interrupted by it (Читая, я уснул 'While reading, I fell asleep').

The imperfective gerund may:

- (a) replace a clause with **и** 'and':

Они сидят, играя (= и играют) в карты They sit playing cards

- (b) replace a clause with **когда** 'when' or 'as':

Уходя (= когда я ухожу), я всегда выключаю свет When I leave I always turn off the light

- (c) replace a clause with **так как** 'since':

Будучи моряком (= так как он моряк), он любит море Being a sailor, he loves the sea

- (d) replace a clause with **если** 'if':

Критикую (= если критикуешь) партию, ты критикуешь всех нас By criticizing the party you criticize all of us

- (e) render English 'without' + -ing (negative gerund):

Я сосчитал деньги, не вынимая руку из кармана

I counted the money without taking my hand out of my pocket

Special features of constructions with gerunds

- (a) The subject of both clauses must be the same:

Он продолжал писать, не обращая внимания на меня
He continued writing, without paying any attention to me

- (b) A comma separates the two clauses:

Спускаясь под гору, я увидел несколько домов
Coming down the hill I caught sight of several houses

- (c) The verb in the main clause may be in any tense and either aspect (e.g. perfective past):

Я кивнул, давая понять, что доволен I nodded, indicating that I was satisfied

Note: Some gerunds also function as adverbs (молча 'silently'), others as prepositions (благодаря 'thanks to').

The perfective gerund

Formation

The perfective gerund is formed by replacing the ending of the perfective infinitive by **-в**:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
прочитáть	'to read'	прочитáв
получíть	'to receive'	получíв

The perfective gerund is invariable. Reflexive gerunds take the ending **-вшись**:

умы́-тсья 'to wash' умы́-вшись

Compounds of **-йтí** 'to go', **-вестí** 'to lead', and **-нестí** 'to carry' form the gerund by replacing the final two letters of the third-person plural by **-я**:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Third-person plural</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
найти	'to find'	найд-ут	найд-я
унести	'to take away'	унес-ут	унес-я

Verbs in **-чъ** form the perfective gerund by adding **-ши** to the masculine past tense:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Masculine past tense</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
зажéчь	'to ignite'	зажёг	зажёг-ши

Functions of the perfective gerund

The perfective gerund describes an action completed before the action of the main verb (which may be in any tense and either aspect):

Получив какие-то бумаги, экскурсоводы разошлись **Having obtained** certain documents, the tour guides dispersed

Переведя этот текст, вы окажете нам услугу **By translating** this text, you will be doing us a good turn

Утром, умывшись и побывши, он завтракает **In the morning, having washed and shaved,** he has breakfast

! **Note:** The same rules apply as to the imperfective gerund: (a) the subject of the two clauses must be the same, (b) a comma appears between the two clauses (see page 148).

Verbs of motion

The 12 commonest pairs of **imperfective** verbs of motion are given here in alphabetical order, with the infinitive, present, and (where appropriate) past tense of each verb. The *multidirectional* verb is the first in each pair, the *unidirectional* the second:

бéгать бéгаю бéгаешь бéгает бéгаем бéгаете бéгают

бежáть бегú бежíшь бежít бежíм бежíте бегút ‘to run’

водíть вожú вóдишь вóдит вóдим вóдите вóдят

вести ведú ведёшь ведёт ведём ведёте ведут; вёл велá ‘to take, lead, drive (a car)’

возíть вожú вóзишь вóзит вóзим вóзите вóзят

везти везú везёшь везёт везём везёте везут; вёз везлá ‘to take, convey’

гоня́ть гоняю гоняешь гоняет гоняем гоняете гоняют

гнáть гонио гóнишь гónит гónим гónите гónят; гнал гналá гнáло ‘to drive, chase’

éздить éзжу éздишь éздит éздим éздите éздят

éхать éду éдешь éдет éдем éдете éдут ‘to travel’

катáть катáю катáешь катáет катáем катáете катáют

катíть качú кáтишь kátит kátим kátите kátyat ‘to roll’ (trans.)

лáзить лáжу лáзишь лáзит лáзим лáзите лáзят

леzти лéзу лéзешь лéзет лéзем лéзете лéзут; лез лéзла ‘to climb’

летáть летáю летáешь летáет летáем летáете летáют

летéть лечú летíшь летít летíм летíте летят ‘to fly’

носить ношú носишь носит носим носите носят

нести несú несёшь несёт несём несёте несут; нёс неслá ‘to take, carry’

плáвать плáваю плáваешь плáвает плáваем плáваете плáвают

плыть плывú плывёшь плывёт плывём плывёте плывут; плыл плылá плýло ‘to swim, float, sail’

пóлзать пólзаю пólзаешь пólзает пólзаем пólзаете пólзают

ползти ползú ползёшь ползёт ползём ползёте ползут; полз ползлá ‘to crawl’

ходíть хожú хóдишь хóдит хóдим хóдите хóдят

идти идú идёшь идёт идём идёте идут; шёл шла ‘to go’ (on foot)

Multidirectional verbs of motion (ходить, ездить, etc.): habitual and repeated actions

A main function of multidirectional verbs of motion is to describe habitual action or movement, and repeated return journeys. The meaning of repetition is sometimes reinforced by a frequentative adverb (всегда 'always', etc.):

Мы ездим за границу каждый год We *go* abroad every year

Я часто буду ходить на каток I will often *go* to the rink

Чаще всего он летает на самолётах Аэрофлота More often than not he *flies* with Aeroflot.

Note: If movement in one direction is emphasized, however (as opposed to return trips), a *unidirectional* verb is used. This often occurs (a) with *когда* 'when' (b) in a sequence of actions or when the time is given:

- (a) Когда я иду на работу, я покупаю газету When I *am on my way to* work I buy a newspaper
- (b) Каждое утро [в 8 часов] я выхожу из дома и еду на работу Every morning [at 8 o'clock] I leave the house and *drive to* work

(but not back again); compare Каждый день я езжу на работу Every day I *drive to* work (and back).

Other functions of multidirectional verbs

(a) Multidirectional verbs also denote an action in general, an ability to perform it, a habit of performing it in a particular way, an inclination or disinclination to perform it, etc.

Ребёнок ещё не ходит The child cannot *walk yet*

Обезьяна хорошо лазит A monkey is good at *climbing*

Она научилась водить машину She has learnt *to drive* a car

Я люблю плавать I like *swimming*

Пингвины не умеют летать Penguins cannot *fly*

Ребёнок ещё ползает The child is still *crawling*

Лошади очень быстро бегают Horses run very fast

Она хорошо ходит на лыжах She *skis* well

(b) They also describe movement in various directions: backwards and forwards, round and round, etc., on one or more occasions:

Она ходила по магазинам She **went** shopping

Я ездил по всей Европе I **travelled all over** Europe

В парке летают комары Midges are **flying around** in the park

Ребёнок ползает по полу The child is **crawling around** on the floor

Дети бегали в саду Children **were running around** in the garden

Нас возили по всей Греции They **took us all over** Greece

Гид водил туристов по Кремлю The guide **took** the tourists **round** the Kremlin

Мать носила ребёнка по спальне The mother **carried** the child **up and down** the bedroom

Мальчики лазят по деревьям The boys **are climbing around** in the trees

Use of the past tense of a multidirectional verb to denote a single return trip

The **past** tense of a multidirectional verb can be used to denote a single return journey (as well as a number of return journeys):

Я ездил в отпуск в США I **went** on holiday to the USA

Он недавно летал в Лондон Recently he **flew** to London (and back)

Вчера вечером она ходила в кино Yesterday evening she **went** to the cinema

The imperative of multidirectional verbs of motion

The imperative of multidirectionals is normally used for negative commands:

Не ходи туда! Don't **go** there!

Не летай вертолётом! Don't **go** by helicopter!

Functions of unidirectional verbs of motion

Unidirectional verbs of motion (идти́, ехать, бежа́ть, лете́ть, etc.) denote movement *in one direction*, sometimes to a named destination:

(a) in the present:

Он идёт по улице He is walking down the street

Она́ едет за границу She is going abroad

Дети бегут домой The children are running home

Обезьяна лазет на дерево The monkey is climbing a tree

Самолёт летит на север The aircraft is flying north

Мяч катится по тротуару The ball is rolling along the pavement

! Note: катиться 'to roll' (intransitive).

(b) in the past:

Поезд шёл в Киев The train was on its way to Kiev

Мы ехали за город We were driving into the country

Пароход плыл в Ялту The steamer was sailing to Yalta

Отец лез на крышу Father was climbing onto the roof

Он гнался за мячом He was chasing the ball

! Note: гнаться за + instr. 'to chase after'.

(c) in the future:

Я буду ехать впереди I will drive in front

Когда мы будем идти мимо театра, купим билеты When we are passing the theatre we will buy some tickets

! Note: (a) Машина идёт or едет 'The car is travelling along', but Поезд идёт 'The train is on its way', Самолёт летит 'The aircraft is flying', Пароход плывёт 'The steamer is sailing' (ехать is not used of rail, air, or water transport). With persons, идти 'to go, walk' is distinguished from ехать 'to go by transport, travel'.

(b) In denoting the immediate future, идти, ехать, and лететь are close in meaning to отправляться 'to set out': Завтра я еду в Москву 'Tomorrow I am going to Moscow/am setting out for Moscow'.

(c) идти is frequently used in the meaning 'to be in progress': Идёт урок 'A lesson is in progress', Идёт фильм 'A film is on', etc.

Несті, весті, везті

(a) **несті** means ‘to be carrying’ or ‘to be taking’:

Она несёт портфель She is carrying a briefcase

Они несли ракетки на корт They were taking the rackets on court

(b) **весті** means ‘to be leading’ or ‘to be taking (on foot)’

Гид ведёт туристов по площади The guide is leading the tourists across the square

Он вёл детей домой He was taking the children home

(c) **везті** means ‘to be taking, conveying (in a vehicle)’:

Он вёз мебель в новый дом He was taking furniture to the new house

Он везёт ребёнка в коляске He is pushing the child in a pram

The imperative of unidirectional verbs of motion

The imperative of unidirectionals is normally used for positive commands:

Иди сюда! Come here!

Лети самолётом! Go by plane!

Perfectives in по-

Perfective verbs in **по-** derive from multidirectional and unidirectional verbs of motion.

(a) Perfectives in **по-** derived from multidirectionals denote actions of short duration (*see also page 115*):

Я похожу по выставке I will walk round the exhibition for a while
Давай поездим по городу Let's drive round town for a while

(b) Those derived from unidirectionals have inceptive meaning (*see also page 115*)

Он пошёл в банк He has gone/he went to the bank (and is not back yet. Compare **Он ходил в банк** He has been to the bank, he went to the bank [and has returned])

Мы поедем за границу We will go abroad

Дети побежали на пляж The children ran off to the beach

Prefixed verbs of motion

- (a) Simple verbs of motion (e.g., multidirectional **лета́ть**/unidirectional **летéТЬ** ‘to fly’) can combine with up to sixteen prefixes to form compounds (e.g. **вле́тать/вле́тéТЬ** ‘to fly into’, **выле́тать/выле́тéТЬ** ‘to fly out of’).
- (b) While simple verbs of motion are all *imperfective*, prefixed compounds form aspectual pairs, with imperfectives based on *multidirectional* verbs and perfectives based on *unidirectional* verbs.
- (c) Some simple verbs of motion form compounds without modification of the root verb (e.g. compounds [in *при-*] of **ле́тать**/**ле́тéТЬ**, **носи́ть/нестí**, **води́ТЬ/ве́стí**, and **вози́ТЬ/ве́зти**):

Imperfective Perfective Meaning

приле́тать	приле́тéТЬ	to arrive by air
приноси́ТЬ	прине́сíТЬ	to bring (carrying)
приводи́ТЬ	приве́сти	to bring (leading)
привози́ТЬ	привезíТЬ	to bring (by transport)

For example:

Самолёт приле́тéЛ The aircraft arrived

Она́ принесёт кни́гу She will bring the book

Он приво́дит детéЙ домо́й He brings the children home

Привезите́ мéбель! Bring the furniture!

- (d) Other verbs of motion modify either the multidirectional (MD) or the unidirectional (UD) verb in forming compounds (in the following, > denotes change to a modified form in the compound stem, = denotes an absence of change):

Simple MD verb	Impf. compound stem	Simple UD verb	Pf. compound stem	Meaning
ходи́ТЬ =	-ходи́ТЬ	идти́ >	-ийти́	to go, walk
е́здить >	-е́зжáТЬ	е́хать =	-е́хать	to travel
бе́гать >	-бегáТЬ	бежа́ТЬ =	-бежа́ТЬ	to run
плáвать >	-плывáТЬ	плы́ТЬ =	-плы́ТЬ	to swim

The function of prefixes in forming compound verbs of motion

Prefixes commonly used in forming compounds number sixteen. They are listed here with the prepositions with which they most frequently combine (not all prefixes combine with all simple verbs of motion).

Prefix	Preposition	Meaning	Prefix	Preposition	Meaning
в-	в + acc.	into	пере-	чéрез + acc.	across
вз-/вс-	на + acc.	up onto	под-	к + dat.	up to
вы-	из + gen.	out of	при-	в/на + acc., к + dat.	arrival
до-	до + gen.	as far as	про-	мíмо + gen.	past
за-	в/на- + acc., к + dat.	dropping in	раз-/рас- -ся/-сь	по + dat.	dispersal
на-	на + acc.	onto	с-	с + gen.	down from
об-	вокрúг	around	с- -ся/-сь		together
от-	от + gen.	away from	у-	из/с/от + gen.	away from

Note: (a) вс- and pac- are used before verbs beginning with voiceless consonants (here -ходить, -плывáть/-плыть), otherwise вз- and раз- are used.

(b) -о- appears between в-, вз-, об-, под-, раз-, с- and -йти (войтí 'to go in', взойтí 'to go up', обойтí 'to go round', etc.).

(c) a hard sign (ъ) appears between the prefixes listed in (b) and -езжáть/-éхать (въезжáть/въéхать 'to drive in', etc.).

(d) choice of preposition with при-, за-, and у- is determined by the dependent noun: thus при- 'arrival' and за- 'dropping by' take в or на + accusative of a *place*, к + dative of a *person*, while у- 'away from' takes из or с + genitive of a *place*, от + genitive of a *person*. For из/с, see also pages 207, 210.

(e) in some contexts, verbs prefixed об-, пере, or про- take an object accusative: Он обошёл лáгеръ 'He walked round the camp', Она переплыла реку 'She swam across the river', Я проéхал два киломéтра 'I drove two kilometres'.

Prefixed verbs of motion: usage

Examples of prefixed verbs based on:

(a) -ходить/-йтъ 'to go':

Она вошлá в кóмнату She entered the room

Он дохóдит до углa He walks as far as the corner

Я зайдú к Сáше/за Сáшой I will call on Sasha/for Sasha

Она отошлá от двéри She moved away from the door

Я перейдú чéрез улицу I will cross the street

Она пришлá в шкóлу/на завóд/к подрúге She came to the school/a factory/to see a friend

(b) -езжáть/-éхать 'to travel':

Он выезжáет из гаражá He drives out of the garage

Он подъéхал к тротуáру He pulled in to the kerb

Я проезжáю мýмо музéя I drive past the museum

Мотоциклисты разъезжáются The motorcyclists disperse

Велосипедисты съезжáются The cyclists meet up

Она yéхала из России/с Урáла/от родítелей She left Russia/the Urals/her parents

Note: (i) compounds of -езжáть/-éхать share an imperative in -езжáй: въезжáй! 'drive in!', не въезжáй! 'don't drive in!' (see page 110)

(ii) The imperfective *past* of compound verbs of motion can denote a *single round trip*: К нам приезжáла тётя 'Auntie came/has been to see us' (and has gone away again').

(iii) Examples of usage with other verbs:

Он подбежáл к киóску He ran up to the kiosk

Самолёт взлетéл The plane took off

Она доплылá до мóла She swam as far as the pier

Куба вывóзит сáхар Cuba exports sugar

(iv) Some of the verbs have figurative meanings: сходить/сойтъ с умá 'to go mad', заводíть/завестí часы 'to wind up a clock', приносить/принести пользу 'to bring benefit', приходить/прийтъ к вывóду 'to come to a conclusion', etc.

I Verb list

(a) The verb list contains examples of:

- (i) verbs in **-чъ** (e.g. **берéчъ**)
- (ii) verbs in **-ти** (e.g. **вестí**)
- (iii) verbs in **-стъ** (e.g. **сестъ**)
- (iv) verbs in **-отъ** (e.g. **борóтъся**)
- (v) verbs in **-ереть** (e.g. **заперéть**)
- (vi) verbs in **-овать** and **-евать** (e.g. **бесéдовать**, **воевáть**)
- (vii) verbs (first conjugation) with consonant change (e.g. **пиcáть**)
- (viii) verbs (second conjugation) with consonant change (e.g. **брóсить**)
- (ix) second-conjugation verbs in **-атъ/-ять** (e.g. **стучáть**, **стоýть**)
- (x) first- and second-conjugation verbs in **-еть** (e.g. **имéть**, **горéть**)
- (xi) monosyllabic verbs (e.g. **брать**)
- (xii) irregular verbs (e.g. **хотéть**)

(b) Most verbs listed are non-derivative (e.g. **дать**). Compound verbs are not normally given when a root verb is available (**дать** ‘to give’ appears, but not **продáть** ‘to sell’ or **задáть** ‘to ask [a question]’). Some compounds have no commonly-used root verb, in which case a hyphenated root is given (e.g. **-казáть**).

(c) Also listed are verbs that have no **-л** in the masculine past (e.g. **везtí** ‘to convey’, masculine past **вёз**).

(d) The pattern of presentation is:

- (i) for all verbs – present or future conjugation, and meaning; the verb’s other aspect (if available)
- (ii) for selected verbs – the past tense; the government of the verb; the imperative; short forms of the perfective passive participle

! Note: (a) In the case of some verbs (e.g. **висéть** ‘to hang’), more details of conjugation are given in the verb list, e.g., the first-person singular, than in the relevant grammatical section, see page 104).

(b) Absence of a first-person singular form indicates that none exists, or that none exists in the meaning given (see, for example, **грéмéть** ‘to thunder’).

бежа́ть/по- ‘to run’: бегу́ бежи́шь бежа́йт бежа́им бежа́ите бегу́т; бежи́!

берéчы/по- ‘to take care of’: берегу́ бережёт берегу́т; берёг берегла́; береги́!

бесéдоватъ ‘to converse’: бесéдую бесéдует бесéдуют
бить/по ‘to strike’: бью бьёт бьют; бей!

бледнéть/по- ‘to grow pale’: бледнéю бледнéет бледнéют

блестéть ‘to shine’: блещу́ блестíт блестя́т; pf. **блеснúть**

болéТЬ (+ instr.) ‘to be ill (with)’: болею́ болеёт болеёут

болéТЬ ‘to hurt’ (intrans.): болит болят

борóться (за + acc.) ‘to struggle (for)’: борóсь борется борются; бори́сь!

боя́ться (+ gen./acc.) ‘to fear’: боюсь бойтся боя́тся; (не) бойся!

брать ‘to take’: беру́ берёт беру́т; брал бралá брало; бери́!; pf. **взять**

брýться/по- ‘to shave’ (intrans.): брею́сь бреется бреются

брóсить ‘to throw’: брошу́ бросит бросят; броси́!; брошен; impf. **бросáть**

будíть/раз- ‘to awaken’ (trans.): бужу́ будит будя́т; буди́!; разбúжен

быть ‘to be’: бу́ду бу́дет бу́дут; был былá было; будь!

везти ‘to convey’: везу́ везёт везу́т; вёз везлá

вéсить ‘to weigh’: вéшу вéсит вéсят

вести ‘to lead’: веду́ ведёт ведут; вёл велá

взять ‘to take’: возьму́ возьмёт возьмут; взял, взялá взяло; возьми́!; взят взятá взято; impf. **брать**

вýдеть/y- ‘to see’: вýжу вýдит вýдят

висéть ‘to hang’ (intrans.): вишу́ висйт вися́т

владéТЬ (+ instr.) ‘to own’: владею́ владеёт владеёут

влечь ‘to attract’: влеку́ влечёт влеку́т; влёк влеклá; -влечён -влеченá (in compounds)

водíть ‘to lead’: вожу́ водит вóдят

воевáть ‘to wage war’: воюю́ воюет воюю́т

возвратиться ‘to return’ (intrans.): возвращусь возвратится
возвратя́тся; impf. **возвраща́ться**

вози́ть ‘to convey’: вожу́ вози́т возя́т

возникнуть ‘to arise’: возникну́ возникнет возникнут; возник
возникла; impf. **возникáть**

волнова́ться/вз- ‘to be excited’: волную́сь волнуется́ волнуются;
(не) волнуйся!

врать/на- and со- ‘to tell lies’: вру́ врёт врут; врал вралá врало;
(не) ври!

встава́ть ‘to get up, stand up’: встаю́ встаёт встаёт; вставай!; pf.
встать

встать ‘to get up, stand up’: встáну встáнет встáнут; встань!;
impf. **встава́ть**

встрéтить ‘to meet’: встрéчу встрéтит встрéтят; impf. **встречáть**
выгляде́ть (+ instr.) ‘to look, appear’: вы́гляжу вы́глядят
вы́глядят

выра́зить ‘to express’: вы́ражу вы́разит вы́разят; вы́ражен; impf.
выражáть

вяза́ть/с- ‘to tie’: вяжу́ вяжет вяжут; -вýзан (in compounds)

гаси́ть/за- or по- ‘to extinguish’: гашу́ гасит гáсят; загáшен/
погáшен

гíбнуть/по- ‘to perish’: гíбну гíбнет гíбнут; гиб/гíбнул гíбла

глáдить/вы- ‘to iron’: глáжу́ глáдит глáдят; вы́глажен

глядéть (на + acc.) ‘to look (at)': гляжу́ глядít глядят; pf.
глáнуть

гнáться (за + instr.) ‘to chase (after)': гоню́сь гонится гóняться;
гнáлся гна́лась

годи́ться (в + acc.) ‘to be fit (for)': гожусь годится годя́тся

голосова́ть/про- (за + acc.) ‘to vote (for)': голосую́ голосует
голосу́ют

горди́ться (+ instr.) ‘to be proud of’: горжусь гордится гордя́тся;
гордись!

горéть/с- ‘to burn’ (intrans.): горйт горя́т

гото́вить/при- ‘to prepare’: гото́влю гото́вит гото́вят; готовы!; пригото́влен

гре́меть/про- ‘to thunder’: гре́мít гре́мáт

гре́ть ‘to heat’: гре́ю гре́ет гре́ют; -трет (in compounds)

грози́ть/при- (+ dat.) ‘to threaten’: гро́жú гро́зит гро́зят

гру́зить/по- ‘to load’: гру́жú гру́зит гру́зят; погру́жен

да́вать ‘to give’: да́ю да́ёт да́йт; дава́й!; pf. да́ть

дави́ть (на + acc.) ‘to press (upon)’: давлó дави́т давя́т; -давлен (in compounds)

да́ть ‘to give’: дам да́шь даст дадíм дадíте даду́т; дал да́лá да́ло; дай!; дан да́нá; impf. дава́ть

действо́вать ‘to act’: дейс्�тви́вую дейс́твует дейс́твуют; дейс́твуй!

держáть ‘to hold’: держу́ держи́т держа́т; держи́!; -держан (in compounds)

добáвить ‘to add’: добáвлю добáвит добáвят; добáвь!; добáвлен; impf. добавля́ть

достигну́ть (+ gen.) ‘to achieve’: дости́гну дости́гнет дости́гнут; дости́г дости́гла; дости́гнут; impf. дости́гáть

дрема́ть ‘to doze’: дремлó дрémлет дрémлют

дрожа́ть ‘to tremble’: дрожу́ дрожи́т дрожа́т; pf. дро́гнуть

ду́ть ‘to blow’: ду́ю ду́ет ду́ют; pf. ду́нуть

дыши́ть ‘to breathe’: дышу́ дыши́т дышат

éздить ‘to travel’: éзжу́ éздит éздят; éзи!

есть/сь- ‘to eat’: ем ешь ест едíм едíте едя́т; ешь!; съéден

éхать/по- ‘to travel’: éду́ éдет éдут; поезжáй!

жалéть/по- ‘to pity’: жалéю жалéет жалéют

жáловаться/по- (на + acc.) ‘to complain (of, about)’: жáлу́юсь жáлу́ется жáлу́ются

жáть ‘to press, squeeze’: жму́ жмёти жмут; жми!; -жат (in compounds)

ждáть/подо- (+ acc./gen.) ‘to wait (for)’: жду́ ждёти ждут; ждал ждалá ждáло; жди!

же́вáть ‘to chew’: жу́ю жу́ёт жу́ют

жéртвовать/по- (+ instr.) ‘to sacrifice’: жéртвую жéртвует
жéртвуют

жечь/с- ‘to burn’ (trans.): жгу жжёт жгут; жёг жгла; жги!; -жжён
-жженá (in compounds)

живь́ти ‘to live’: живу́ живёт живу́т; жил жила́ жи́ло

забо́титься/по- (о + prep.) ‘to care about’: забо́чусь забо́тится
забо́тятся

забы́ть ‘to forget’: забу́ду забу́дет забу́дут; (не) забу́ды!; забы́т;
impf. забыва́ть

завéдовать (+ instr.) ‘to be in charge of’: завéдую завéдует
завéдуют

завíдовать/по- (+ dat.) ‘to envy’: завíдую завíдует завíдуют

зави́сеть (от + gen.) ‘to depend (on)’: зави́шу зави́сит зави́сят

закры́ти ‘to shut’: закрою́ закроёт закроют; закро́й!; закры́т;
impf. закрывáть

замёрзну́ть ‘to freeze’ (intrans.): замёрзну замёрзнет замёрзнут;
замёрз замёрзла; impf. замерзáть

замéтить ‘to notice’: замéчу замéтит замéтят; замéчен; impf.
замечáть

заня́ть ‘to occupy’: займу́ займёт займут; занял заняла́ заняло;
займí!; занят занятá занято; impf. занимáть

заперéть ‘to lock’: запрú запрёт запрút;záпер заперла́ зáперло;
запрí!; зáперт запертá зáперто; impf. запира́ть

запрети́ть ‘to forbid’: запрещу́ запрети́т запрети́т; запрещён
запрещенá; impf. запреща́ть

заряди́ть ‘to load, charge’: заряжу́ заряди́т заряди́т; заряжён
заряженá; impf. заряжáть

захвати́ть ‘to seize’: захвачу́ захвати́т захвати́т; захвáчен; impf.
захвáтывать

защити́ть (от + gen.) ‘to defend (from)’: защищу́ защити́т
защити́т; защищён защищенá; impf. защища́ть .

заяви́ть ‘to declare’: заявлó заяви́т заяви́т; заявлén; impf.
заявлáть

звати́/по- ‘to call’: зову́ зовёт зову́т; звал звалá звáло; зови́!
-зван (in compounds)

звукать ‘to sound’: звучит звучат

знакомиться/по- (с + instr.) ‘to become acquainted (with)’: знакомлюсь знакомится знакомятся; знакомься!

идти ‘to go’: иду идёт идут; шёл шла; иди!

изобрести ‘to invent’: изобрету изобретёт изобретут; изобрёл изобрелá; изобретён изобретенá; impf. **изобретать**

иметь ‘to have’: имею имеёт имеют

интересоваться (+ instr.) ‘to be interested in’: интересуюсь интересуётся интересуются

искать (+ acc./gen.) ‘to look for’: ищу ищет ищут; иши!

использовать ‘to use’ (impf. and pf.): использую использует используют; используй!; использован

исследовать ‘to investigate’ (impf. and pf.): исследую исследует исследуют; исследован

исчезнуть ‘to disappear’: исчезну исчезнет исчезнут; исчёз исчёзла; impf. **исчезать**

-казать (only in compounds): -кажу -кажет -кажут; -кажи!; -казан; impf. -казывать

казаться/по- (+ instr.) ‘to seem’: кажусь кажется кажется

катить ‘to roll’ (trans.): качу катит катят

кашлять ‘to cough’: кашлюю кашляет кашляют; pf. **кашлянуть**

кипеть/вс- ‘to boil’ (intrans.): киплю (in figurative sense only) кипит кипят

класть ‘to place’: кладу кладёт кладут; клади!; pf. **положить**

колебаться/по- ‘to hesitate’: колеблюсь колеблется колеблются

командовать (+ instr.) ‘to command’: командую командаут командаут

кормить/на- ‘to feed’: кормлю кормит кормят; накормлен

красить/вы- ог по- ‘to paint’: красу красит красят; выкрашен

краснеть/по- ‘to blush’: краснею краснеет краснеют

красть/y- ‘to steal’: краду крадёт крадут; украден

крепнуть/o- ‘to get stronger’: крепну крепнет крепнут; креп крепла

кричать ‘to shout’: кричу кричит кричат; кричи!; pf. **крикнуть**

купить ‘to buy’: куплю́ купит купи́т; купи́!; куплен; impf. **покупа́ть**

лази́ть ‘to climb’: лажу́ лазит лазят; (не) лазь!

лгати́/со- ог на- ‘to tell lies’: лгу́ лжёт лгут; лгал, лгалá, лгáло; (не) лги!

лежа́ть ‘to lie’: лежу́ лежит лежа́т

ле́зти ‘to climb’: ле́зу ле́зет ле́зут; лез ле́зла; ле́зь!

лете́ть ‘to fly’: лечу́ летит летя́т

лечи́/то lie down: ля́гу ля́жет ля́гут; лёг леглá; ляг!; impf. **ложи́ться**

лизи́/to lick: лижу́ лижет ли́жут; pf. **лизнúть**

лити́/to pour: лью́ льёт льют; лил лилá ли́ло; лей!; -лит (in compounds)

лови́ть ‘to catch’: ловлю́ ло́вят ло́вят; pf. **пойма́ть**

люби́ть ‘to like, love’: люблю́ любит любят

любовáться/по- (+ instr. or на + acc.) ‘to admire’: любу́юсь
любуется любу́ются

махáть ‘to wave’: машу́ машет ма́шут; pf. **махи́нуть**

мести́/под- ‘to sweep’: мету́ метёт метут; мёл мелá; подметён
подметенá

молча́ть ‘to be silent’: молчу́ молчйт молча́т; молчи!

мочи́/с- ‘to be able’: могу́ может мόгут; мог моглá

мчáться ‘to race’: мчусь мчáтся мчáтся; мчись!

мы́ться/вы́- ог по- ‘to wash’ (intrans.): мою́сь моется моются;
мойся!

награди́ть (за + acc.) ‘to reward (for)’: награжу́ наградйт
наградят; награждён награжденá; impf. **награжда́ть**

надéть ‘to put on’: надéну надéнет надéнут; надéны!; impf.
надевáть

надéяться/по- (на + acc.) ‘to hope (for)’: наде́юсь наде́ется
наде́ются

назвáть ‘to name’: назову́ назовёт назовут; назвал, назвалá
назвáло; нáзван; impf. **назывáть**

найти́ ‘to find’: найду́ найдёт найдут; нашёл нашлá; нáйден;
impf. **находи́ть**

напасть (на + acc.) 'to attack': нападу́ нападёт нападут; impf. напада́ть

находи́ть 'to find': нахожу́ находит нахóдят; pf. **найти́**

находи́ться 'to be situated': нахожусь находится нахóдятся

нача́ть 'to begin' (trans.): начну́ начнёт начнут; начал началá

начало; начни́!; начат начатá начато; impf. **начинáть**

нача́ться 'to begin' (intrans.): начнётся начнутся; начался

началáсь; impf. **начинáться**

ненави́деть 'to hate': ненави́жу ненави́дит ненави́дят

нести́ 'to carry': несу́ несёт несут; нёс неслá; несí!

носи́ть 'to carry': ношу́ носит носят

ночевáть/пере- 'to spend the night': ночу́ю ночует ночу́ют

и́рвáться/по- (+ dat.) 'to please': и́рвлюсь и́рвится и́рвятся

оби́деть 'to offend': оби́жу оби́дит оби́дят; оби́жен; impf.

оби́жáть

обня́ть 'to embrace': обниму́ обнимет обнимут; óбнял обнялá

обняло; обнимí!; impf. **обнимáть**

обогнáть 'to overtake, outstrip': обгоню́ обгónит обгónят;

обогнál обогналá обогнáло; impf. **обгоня́ть**

образовáть 'to form' (impf. and pf.): образу́ю образует

образу́ют; образован; impf. also **образóвывать**

обрати́ться (к + dat.) 'to turn (to)': обращусь обрати́тся

обратя́тся; обратись!; impf. **обращáться**

обсуди́ть 'to discuss': обсужу́ обсúдит обсúдят; обсуждён

обсужденá; impf. **обсужда́ть**

одéться 'to dress' (intrans.): одéнусь одéнется одéнутся; одéнься!

impf. **одевáться**

организовáть 'to organize' (impf. and pf.): организу́ю

организу́ют организу́ют; организован

освети́ть 'to illuminate': освещу́ освети́т осветя́т; освещён

освещенá; impf. **освещáть**

освободи́ть 'to free': освобожу́ освободи́т освободят;

освобождён освобожденá; impf. **освобожда́ть**

оставаться ‘to remain’: остаюсь остаётся остаются; оставайся!; pf. **остаться**

остановиться ‘to stop’ (intrans.): остановлюсь остановится остановятся; остановись!; impf. **останавливаться**

остаться ‘to remain’: останусь останется останутся; останься! impf. **оставаться**

ответить (на + acc.) ‘to answer’: отвёчу отвётил отвётят; отвёть!; impf. **отвечать**

открыть ‘to open’ (trans.): открою откроет откроют; открой!; открыл; impf. **открывать**

отнять ‘to take away’: отниму отнимет отнимут; отнял отняла отняло; отними!; impf. **отнимать**

отпереть ‘to unlock’: отопрү отопрёт отопрүт; отопрý!; отпер отперлá отперло; отперт отпертá отперто; impf. **отпирать**

ошибиться ‘to make a mistake’: ошибусь ошибётся ошибутся; ошиббся ошиблась; impf. **ошибаться**

пахнуть (+ instr.) ‘to smell (of)’: пахнет пахнут; пах пахла

переставать ‘to stop’ (intrans.): перестаю перестаёт перестают; pf. **перестать**

перестать ‘to stop’ (intrans.): перестану перестанешь перестанут; перестаны!; impf. **переставать**

петь/с- ‘to sing’: пою поёт поют; пой!

печь/ис- ‘to bake’: пеку печёт пекут; пёк пекла; испечён испеченá

писать/на- ‘to write’: пишу пишет пишут; пиши!; написан

пить/вы- ‘to drink’: пью пьёт пьют; пил, пила, пило; пей!; выпит

плакать ‘to weep’: плачу плачет плачут; (не) плачи!

платить/за- (за + acc.) ‘to pay (for)’: плачу платит платят;

плати!; заплачен

плевать ‘to spit’: плюю плюёт плюют; pf. **плюнуть**

плыть ‘to swim’: плыву плывёт плывут; плыл, плыла плыло

победить ‘to win’: победит победят; побеждён побежденá; impf.

побеждать

повесить ‘to hang’ (trans.): повешу повесит повесят; повесь!;

повешен; impf. **вешать**

подвéргнуть (+ dat.) ‘to subject (to)’: подвéргну подвéргнет
 подвéргнут; подвéрг подвéргла; подвéргнут; impf. **подвергáть**
подня́ть ‘to lift’: подниму поднимет поднимут; пóднял подняла
 пóдняло; поднимí!; пóднят поднятá пóднято; impf. **поднимáть**
подтвéрдítъ ‘to confirm’: подтвérжú подтвéрдít подтвérдят;
 подтвérждён подтвérжденá; impf. **подтвérждáть**

поздráвить (с + instr.) ‘to congratulate (on)’: поздráвлю
 поздráвит поздráвят; поздráвь!; impf. **поздравля́ть**

покры́ть ‘to cover’: покróю покróет покróют; покróй!; покрыт;
 impf. **покрыва́ть**

ползти́ ‘to crawl’: ползú ползёт ползút; полз ползлá

пóльзоваться/вос- (+ instr.) ‘to use’: пóльзуясь пóльзуется
 пóльзуются

помóчь (+ dat.) ‘to help’: помогу помóжет помóгут; помог
 помоглá; помогí!; impf. **помогáть**

понíзить ‘to lower’: понíжу понíзит понíзят; понíжен; impf.
понижáть

понять ‘to understand’: поймú поймёт поймút; пóнял поняла
 пóняло; поймí!; пóнят понятá пóнято; impf. **понимáть**

пóртить/ис- ‘to spoil’: пóрчу пóртит пóртят; испóрчен

посадíть ‘to plant, seat’: посажú посадít посáдят; посáжен;
 impf. **сажáть**

посвятíть (+ dat.) ‘to dedicate (to)’: посвящú посвятít
 посвятят; посвящён посвященá; impf. **посвящáть**

посетíть ‘to visit’: посещú посетít посетят; посещён посещенá;
 impf. **посещáть**

пráвить (+ instr.) ‘to rule, govern’: прáвлю прáвит прáвят

пráздновать/от- ‘to celebrate’: прáздную прáзднует прáзднуют

превратíть (в + acc.) ‘to transform (into)’: превращú превратít
 превратят; превращён превращенá; impf. **превращáть**

предупредíть ‘to warn’: предупрежú предупредít предупредят;
 предупреждён предупрежденá; impf. **предупреждáть**

прекратíть ‘to stop, curtail’: прекращú прекратít прекратят;
 прекратí!; прекращён прекращенá; impf. **прекращáть**

преодолеть ‘to overcome’: преодолéю преодолéет преодолéют;
преодолён преодоленá; impf. **преодолевать**

приблизиться (к + dat.) ‘to approach’: приближусь приблíзится
приблизятся; impf. **приближаться**

привыкнуть (к + dat.) ‘to get used (to)’: привыкну привыкнет
привыкнут; привык привыкла; impf. **привыкать**

пригласить ‘to invite’: приглашú пригласít пригласят;
пригласí!; приглашён приглашена; pf. **приглашать**

признаваться (в + prep.) ‘to confess (to)’: признаюсь
признаётся признаются; pf. **признаться**

принять ‘to accept’: примú прýмет прýмут; прýнял принялá
прýняло; примí!; прýнят принялá прýято; impf. **принимать**

пробовать/по- ‘to test, try’: пробую пробует пробуют; прóбуй!

просить/по- (+ acc./gen.) ‘to request’: прошú просит прóсят;
просí!

простить (за + acc.) ‘to forgive (for)’: прощú простít простят;
простí!; прошён прощенá; impf. **прощать**

проститься (с + instr.) ‘to say goodbye (to)’: прощусь простится
простятся; impf. **прощаться**

простудиться ‘to catch cold’: простужусь простудится
простудятся; impf. **простужаться**

прятать/с- ‘to hide’: прячу прýчет прýчат; прýчъ!; спрýтан

пустить ‘to let go’: пущу пустит пýстят; пýщен; impf. **пускать**

радоваться/об- (+ dat.) ‘to rejoice (at)’: ráдуюсь ráдуется
ráдуются

разбить ‘to smash’: разобью разобьёт разобьót; разбéй! разбйт;
impf. **разбивать**

развиться ‘to develop’ (intrans.): разовьюсь разовьётся
разовьются; развился развилáсь; impf. **развиваться**

раздеться ‘to get undressed’: раздénусь раздénется раздénутся;
раздénься!; impf. **раздеваться**

расстаться (с + instr.) ‘to part (with)’: расстáнусь расстáнется
расстáнутся; impf. **расставаться**

растí/вы- ‘to grow’ (intrans.): растú растёт растút; рос roslá

рвать ‘to tear’: рву рвёт рвут; рвал рвалá рвáло

рéзать/раз- ‘to cut’: рéжу рéжет рéжут; режь!; разрéзан

рисовáть/на- ‘to draw’: рисóю рисóyet рисóют; нарисóван

рубить ‘to chop’: рублó рубит рубят; -рублен (in compounds)

руководíть (+ instr.) ‘to manage’: руководжú руководдít

руководят

садíться ‘to sit down’: сажúсь садíтся садýтся: садíсь!; pf. сесть

свистéть ‘to whistle’: свищú свистtít свистtát; свíстнуть

сердíться/рас- ‘to get angry’: сержúсь сérдится сérдятся; (не) сердíсь!

сесть ‘to sit down’: сяду сядет сядут; сядь!; impf. **садíться**

сéять/по- ‘to sow’: сéю сéет сéют; посéян

сидéть ‘to sit’: сижú сидít сидят; сидí!

сказáть ‘to say’: скажú скáжет скáжут; скажí!; скáзан; impf.

говорíть

скрыть ‘to conceal’: скрою скроéт скроют; скрой!; скрыт; impf.

скрывáть

слать ‘to send’: шлю шлёт шлют; шли!

следíть (за + instr.) ‘to track’: слежú следíт следят

слéдоватy/по- (за + instr.) ‘to follow’: слéдую слéдует слéдуют

слышать/y- ‘to hear’: слýшу слýшит слýшат; услýшан

сметь/по- ‘to dare’: смéю смéет смéют

смейтся/по- (над + instr.) ‘to laugh (at)’: смейось смеётся

смеётся; (не) смéйся!

смотréть/по- (на + acc.) ‘to look (at)’: смотрó смотрит смотрят;

смотрí!

снять ‘to take off’: снимú сnímet сníмут; снял снялá сняло;

снимí!; снят снятá снято; impf. **снимáть**

совéтоватy/по- (+ dat.) ‘to advise’: совéтую совéтует совéтуют

согласíться (на + acc./c + instr.) ‘to agree (to something/with someone)’: соглашúсь согласíтся соглася́тся; impf. **соглашáться**

спасí ‘to save’: спасý спасёт спасýт; спас спаслá; спасён

спасенá; impf. **спасáть**

спать ‘to sleep’: сплю спит спят; спал спалá спáло; спи!

спросить ‘to ask’: спрошу спрóсит спрóсят; спроси!; impf.

спрашивать

стáвить/по- ‘to put, stand’ (trans.): стáвлю стáвит стáвят; ставь!; постáвлен

стать ‘to become’: стáну стáнет стáнут; стань!; impf.

становиться

стерéть ‘to erase’: сотрú сотрёт сотрút; стёр стёрла; сотрý!; стёрт; impf. **стирать**

стоять ‘to stand’ (intrans.): стою́ стойт́ стоят; стой!

стричь/o- ‘to cut (hair or nails)’: стригу́ стрижёт стригут; стриг стрýгла; острýжен

ступíть ‘to step’: ступлю́ ступит́ стúпят; impf. **ступа́ть**

стучáть/по- (в + acc.) ‘to knock (at)’: стучу́ стучйт́ стучáт

судíть ‘to judge’: сужу́ судит́ сúдят

танцевáты/c- ‘to dance’: танцую́ танцует́ танцуют

táять/рас- ‘to melt’ (intrans.): тáет тáют

темнéть/по- ‘to grow dark’: темнéет темнéют

терéть ‘to rub’: тру́ трёт трут; тёр тёрла; три!

терпéть ‘to bear, tolerate’: терплю́ тéрпит тéрпят

течь ‘to flow’: течёт текут; тёк теклá

топíть ‘to heat’: топлю́ тóпит тóпят; -топлен (in compounds)

торговáть (+ instr.) ‘to trade (in)’: торгу́ю торгует́ торгуют

торопíться/по- ‘to hurry’: тороплю́сь торопится́ торопятся; торопíсь!

трáтить/ис- (на + acc.) ‘to expend (on)’: трáчу́ трáтит трáтят; траты!; истрачен

трéбовать/по- (+ gen./acc.) ‘to demand’: трéбую́ трéбует трéбуют

трудíться ‘to labour’: тружусь́ трудится́ трудятся; трудíсь!

трясти ‘to shake’ (trans.): трясу́ трясёт́ трясут; тряс тряслá; pf.

тряхнúть

убедíть ‘to convince’: убедит́ убедят; убеждён убежденá; impf. **убеждáть**

удивиться (+ dat.) ‘to be surprised (at)’: удивлюсь удивится
удивя́тся; impf. **удивляться**

укрепить ‘to strengthen’: укреплю укрепит укрепят; укреплён
укрепленá; impf. **укреплять**

умереть ‘to die’: умрú умрёт умрúт; ýмер умерлá ýмерло; impf.
умирать

уметь ‘to know how’: умею умеет умеют

упасть ‘to fall’: упаду упадёт упадут; impf. **падать**

употребить ‘to use’: употреблю употребит употребят;
употреблён употребленá; impf. **употреблять**

успеть ‘to have time’: успéю успéет успéют; impf. **успевать**

установить ‘to establish’: установлю установит установят;
установлен; impf. **устанавливать**

участвовать (в + prep.) ‘to participate in’: участвую участвует
участвуют

учесть ‘to take account of’: учтú учтёт учтут; учёл учлá; учтý!
учтён учтенá; imperf. **учитывать**

ходить ‘to go’: хожу ходит ходят; ходи!

хотéть/за- ‘to want’: хочу хочешь хочет хотим хотите хотят

худéть/по- ‘to lose weight’: худéю худéет худéют

цвести ‘to flower’: цветёт цветут; цветлц цветлá

чесáть/по- ‘to scratch’: чешу чéшет чéшут

чи́стить/вы- ог по- ‘to clean’: чищу чи́стит чи́стят; вычищен/
пochищен

чúвствовать ‘to feel’: чúвствую чúвствует чúвствуют

шептáть ‘to whisper’: шепчу шéпчет шéпчут; pf. **шепнúть**

шить/с- ‘to sew’: шью шьёт шьют; шей!

шумéть ‘to make a noise’: шумít шумят

шутíть/по- ‘to joke’: шучу шутит шутят

эконóмить/с- ‘to economize’: эконóмлю эконóмит эконóмят;
сэконóмлен

явíться (+ instr. ‘to be’): явлюсь явится явятся; impf. **являться**

The adverb

An adverb is a part of speech that expresses the manner, time, place, or extent of an action. It usually modifies a verb ('He is driving **fast**'), but may also modify an adjective ('a **surprisingly** apt pupil') or another adverb ('She arrived **very** early'). There are adverbs of manner ('He behaved **stupidly**'), place ('Come **here**'), time ('Do it **now**'), and extent ('It is **extremely** warm').

Formation

Many adverbs derive from adjectives by replacing the endings **-ый** and **-ий** by, respectively, **-о** and **-е**:

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Adverb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
бы́стр-ый	quick	бы́стр-о	quickly
глáдк-ий	smooth	глáдк-о	smoothly
íскренн-ий	sincere	íскренн-е	sincerely

Note: (a) **рано** 'early' and **поздно** 'late' derive, respectively, from the soft-ending adjectives **ранний** and **поздний**.

(b) some adjectives in **-ый/-ий** which have no adverb in **-о/-е** form the adverb on the model **по-** + dative of adjective:

другóй	different	по-другóму	differently
ráзный	various	по-ráзному	variously
прéжний	previous	по-прéжнему	previously

Adjectives in **-ский/-цкий** and **-йческий** form adverbs in **-и:**

брáтск-ий	fraternal	брáтск-и	fraternally
герóйческ-ий	heroic	герóйческ-и	heroically

- ! Note: Adjectives of nationality and some others form their adverbs with **по-:**
■ Он говорит **по-рúсски** 'He speaks Russian', Он ведёт себя **по-дéтски** 'He behaves **childishly**'.

Derivation of adverbs

Adverbs may derive from:

(a) nouns:

веснóй/лéтом/осенью/зимóй in spring/summer/autumn/
winter

ýтром/днéм/вéчером/ночью in the morning/afternoon/evening/
at night

дóма, домóй at home, home(wards)

(b) preposition + long or short adjective:

в основнóм basically

издалекá from afar

напráво, наléво to/on the right, to/on the left

снова again

(c) preposition + noun:

вмéсте together

вóвремя in time

сначáла (at) first

(d) numerals:

вдвоём, втроём, вчетверóм two, three, four together

во-пérвых, во-вторýх, в-трéтьих firstly, secondly, thirdly

впервые for the first time

одиáжды, двáжды, трíжды once, twice, thrice

(e) possessive pronouns:

по-мóему, по-нашему, по-вáшему in my, our, your opinion

(note: **по егó/еë/их мнéнию** ‘in his, her, their opinion’)

(f) the demonstrative pronoun **сей** ‘this’ + noun:

сегóдня, сейчáс today, now

Adverbs of place

Adverbs of place can be arranged:

(a) in groups of three, the first denoting *location*, the second *direction*, and the third *source*:

(i) Где ваш дом? *Where is your house?*

Куда ты идёшь? *Where are you going?*

Откуда дует ветер? *From where is the wind blowing?*

(ii) Я живу здесь *I live here*

Идите сюда *Come here*

Отсюда до города недалеко *It's not far from here to the town*

(iii) Она работает там *She works there*

Идите туда *Go over there*

Оттуда до Киева час лёта *From there to Kiev is an hour's flight*

(iv) Вдалі блестить река *A river gleams in the distance*

Она смотрит вдаль *She looks into the distance*

Город виден издали *The town is visible from afar*

(v) Он ждёт внизу *He is waiting downstairs*

Она спускается вниз *She goes downstairs*

Критика снизу *Criticism from below (i.e. from the grass roots)*

(vi) Внутри было темно *It was dark inside*

Дверь открывается внутрь *The door opens inwards*

Дверь заперта изнутри *The door is locked on/from the inside*

(vii) Ребёнок спит наверху *The child is asleep upstairs*

Она поднимается наверх *She goes upstairs*

сверху донизу *from top to bottom*

(b) in pairs, the first denoting *location*, the second *direction*:

(i) Онá заперлá дверь **снарúжи** She locked the door **on/from the outside**

Он вышёл **нарúжу** He came **outside**

(ii) Лейтенáнт маршируéт **впередí** The lieutenant marches **in front**

Он шёл **прáмо впередí** He was walking **straight ahead**

(iii) Я рабóтаю **дóма** I work at **home**

Он идёт **домóй** He is going **home**

(iv) трéтий вагóн сзáди the third carriage **from the back**

Назáд! Stand **back!**

(c) in pairs, one denoting *location* and *direction*, the other *origin*:

(i) Он стоял **налéво** от киоска He stood **to the left** of the kiosk

Онá свернúла **налéво** She turned **to the left**

Он вошёл **слéва** He entered **from the left**

(ii) Пóчта нахóдится **напráво** от дóма The post office is situated **to the right** of the house

Он повернúл **напráво** He turned **to the right**

Онí пишут **спráва** **налéво** They write **from right to left**

Note: One pair of spatial adverbs (**всíоду** ‘everywhere’ and **отовсíоду** ‘from everywhere’) denotes, respectively, *location* and *origin*:

Он **всíоду** побывáл He has been **everywhere**

Гóсти съéхались **отовсíоду** Guests converged **from all sides**

Adverbs of time

(a) Adverbs of time include a number that imply frequency, often combining with a verb in the imperfective aspect (*see page 119*):

- всегда** always
- иногда** sometimes
- обычно** usually
- часто** often

(b) Others are associated with perfective verbs: **вдруг/внезáпно** ‘suddenly’, **скóро/вскóре** ‘soon’, **срáзу** ‘at once’:

- Вдруг раздáлся крик Suddenly a cry rang out
- Я скóро приéду I will be there soon
- Она срáзу понялá это She understood this at once

(c) **Тепéрь** ‘now’ relates only to the present, while **сейчáс** ‘just now, now, in a minute’ can relate to past, present, or future:

- Он был здесь сейчáс He was here just now
- Сейчáс она занятá She is busy at the moment
- Он сейчáс придёт He will be here in a minute

(d) **Тогдá** ‘then, at that time’ is distinguished from **потóм/затéм** ‘then, afterwards’:

- Тогдá она была молодá Then she was young
- Отдохнём, потóм поработаем We'll rest, then do some work

(e) **Дóлго** ‘(for) a long time’ denotes a definite though unspecified period of time (Он дóлго жил там ‘He lived there for a long time’), **надóлго** ‘for a long time’ denotes a time subsequent to the completion of an action (Они расстáлись надóлго ‘They separated for a long time’), **давнó** ‘for a long time’ (also ‘a long time ago’) refers to an action or state begun in the past and not yet completed (Я давнó изучаю языки ‘I have been learning languages for a long time’) (for tense usage and **давнó не**, *see page 120*).

(f) **Недáвно** means ‘recently’:

- Они недáвно поженíлись They got married recently

- (g) **Позавчера́** ‘the day before yesterday’, **вчера́** ‘yesterday’, **сего́дня** ‘today’, **завтра́** ‘tomorrow’, and **послеза́втра** ‘the day after tomorrow’ can combine with the names of parts of the day: **вчера́ нόчью** ‘yesterday night’, **сего́дня днём** ‘this afternoon’ **завтра́ ве́чером** ‘tomorrow evening’, etc.
- (h) **Веснóй** ‘in spring’, **лётом** ‘in summer’, **осенью** ‘in autumn’, and **зимóй** ‘in winter’ can combine with the relevant form of **прошлый** ‘last’, **этот** ‘this’, and **бúдущий** ‘next’, or with **прошлого́/этого́/бúдущего́ гóда** ‘of last, of this, of next year’: **прошлой веснóй** ‘last spring’, **этим лётом** ‘this summer’, **осенью этого́ гóда** ‘this autumn’, **зимóй бúдущего́ гóда** ‘next winter’.
- (i) **Ещё** means ‘still’ (Вы **ещё** здесь? ‘Are you still here?’), **ещё не** ‘not yet’ (Она́ **ещё не** пришлá ‘She hasn’t arrived yet’). **Ещё** ‘another, an additional’ (**Ещё чáшку?** ‘Another cup?’) is distinguished from **другóй** ‘another, a different’ (Я закажú **другóе винó** ‘I’ll order another (i.e. a different) wine’). **Ещё раз** ‘again’ refers to a repeated action (Спрошу́ **ещё раз** ‘I’ll ask again’), **снова** often to a resumed activity (Пóсле оперáции я **снова** займúсь аэробикой ‘After the operation I’ll take up aerobics again’), **опять** ‘again’ often introduces a note of irritation (Опять прóсят сдáчи! ‘They’re asking for change again!’).
- (j) **Ужé** ‘already’ (Он ужé уéхал ‘He has already left’) often has no equivalent in English in indicating early implementation: Войнá началáсь **ужé** в 1939 годú ‘The war began in (as early as) 1939’. **Ужé не** (= **больше не**) means ‘no longer’ (Она́ **ужé не** работает здесь ‘She doesn’t work here any more’).
- (k) Many adverbial phrases are based on **порá** ‘time’: **до тех пор** ‘until then’, **с тех пор** ‘since then’, **до сих пор** ‘up to now’, etc. **Покá** is more emphatic than **до сих пор** (**Покá** ничегó не извéстно ‘So far nothing is known’). It also means ‘for now, for the time being’ (**Покá** это всё ‘That’s all for now’).

Adverbs of manner

(a) Many adverbs of manner in **-о** and **-е** derive from adjectives in **-ый/ -ий** and answer the question **как?** 'how?' or **каким образом?** 'in what manner?':

Он едет **быстро** He is driving **fast**

Она говорит **искрение** She speaks **sincerely**

Он работает **хорошо** He works **well**

Она идет **медленно** She is walking **slowly**

Он **интересно** рассказывает He narrates in an **interesting way**

(b) Some of these function as predicative adverbs: **Ему грустно** 'He feels sad', **Ей плохо** 'She feels bad', **В комнате холодно** 'It is cold in the room', etc. They can also be used by themselves: **Бесело** 'It's fun', and with verbs: **Ему стало грустно** 'He became saddened'.

(c) Some adverbs of manner, especially those in **по-**, imply similarity

Мы еще живем **по-старому** We are still living **in the old way**

Она одета **по-дорожному** She is dressed **for the road**

Он **по-лиси** хитер He is as cunning **as a fox**

Adverbs of degree and intensity

Most adverbs of degree qualify adjectives or other adverbs:

Он говорит **очень** хорошо He speaks **very well**

Она удивительно талантлива She is **remarkably** talented

Сегодня слишком жарко It is **too** hot today

Она много/мало работает She works **hard/not very hard**

Она совершенно права She is **absolutely** right

Это крайне интересно That is **extremely** interesting

Он необыкновенно умен He is **unusually** clever

Я весьма рад I am **extremely** glad

Это совсем новый план That is a **completely** new plan

Это чрезвычайно важно That is **extremely** important

Indefinite adverbs in -то, -нибудь, -либо, and кóе-

(a) Adverbs in **-то** (гдé-то, кудá-то, kák-to, kogdá-то, почемú-то) denote a particular but unidentified place, manner, time, cause, etc., mainly in the past or present:

Он живёт гдé-то в гóроде He lives **somewhere** in the town

Он кудá-то ушёл He's gone off **somewhere**

Он kák-to решíл задáчу He solved the problem **somewhow**

Она kogdá-то жилá здесь At one time she lived here

Он почемú-то сердít For some reason he is angry

(b) Adverbs in **-нибудь** (гдé-нибудь, кудá-нибудь, kák-нибудь, kogdá-нибудь, почемú-нибудь) denote a place, manner, time, cause, etc. that is indefinite or still to be decided upon or selected. Because of their hypothetical nature, these adverbs are found in questions, after imperatives, in subjunctive constructions, and where different actions, persons, things, reasons on different occasions are referred to:

Мы встрéтимся гдé-нибудь We will meet **somewhere**

Поезжáйте кудá-нибудь в воскресéнье Go for a drive
somewhere on Sunday

Нáдо kák-нибудь помóчь ему **Somehow or other** we must help
him

Вы kogdá-нибудь читáли эту кни́гу? Have you **ever** read this
book?

Он хóчет, чтобы я kogdá-нибудь сыгрáл с ним в шáхматы
He wants me to play chess with him **sometime**

Он всегdá почемú-нибудь опáздывает For some reason or
other he is always late

(c) Adverbs in **-либо** are even less definite than those in **-нибудь**
(Он kogdá-либо заходíл/захóдит? 'Did he/does he **ever** drop in?').

(d) Among the commonest indefinite adverbs in **кóе-** are **кóе-где** (Кóе-где встречаются вóлки 'Here and there one encounters wolves'), and **кóе-как** (Кóе-как мы доплыли до бéрега '**Somehow or other** (i.e. with difficulty) we reached the shore').

Negative adverbs

(a) The negative adverbs **нигдé**, **никáк**, **никудá**, **никогдá**, **ниоткúда**, **нискóлько** (like negative pronouns, *see page 78*) require the negative particle **не** before a following verb or short adjective:

Я нигдé не мог найти нúжную мне пластíнку I could **not** find the record I need **anywhere**

Я никáк не мог узнать её телефон I could **not** find out her telephone number **at all**

Она никудá не идёт She is **not** going **anywhere**

Я никогдá не пью кóфе I **never** drink coffee

Она нискóлько не удивленá She is **not in the least** surprised

Они ниоткúда не получáют посылок They do **not** get parcels from **anywhere**

(b) The negative adverbs may combine with negative pronouns: **Никтó никогдáничегó не знает** ‘No one ever knows anything’.

(c) The negative adverbs **нéгде**, **нéкуда**, **нéзачем**, **нéкогда**, **нéоткуда** denote lack of potential or (in the case of **нéзачем**) motive for carrying out an action, and combine with an infinitive:

Нéгде тренировáться There is **nowhere** to train

Нéкуда идти There is **nowhere** to go

Нéзачем спóрить There is **no point** in arguing

Нéкогда репетíровать There is **no time** to rehearse

Нéоткуда ожидáть помощи There is **nowhere** to expect help from

Note: (a) **было** and **будет** are used in the past and future: **Нéгде было держáть кур** ‘There was nowhere to keep chickens’, **Нéзачем будет жáловаться** ‘There will be no point in complaining’.

(b) The logical subject of an action appears in the *dative case*: **Им нéгде игрáть** ‘They have nowhere to play’, **Мне нéкогда будет читáть** ‘I shall have no time to read’.

(c) The positive counterpart to **нéгде**, **нéкуда**, **нéоткуда** involves **éсть**, **было**, and **будет**: **Éсть кудá пойтí** There is **somewhere** to go’, **Нам было где отдыkháть** ‘There was somewhere for us to relax’, **Дéтям будет где игрáть** ‘The children will have **somewhere** to play’.

Comparative adverbs

(a) Comparative adverbs are formed from adverbs in **-о** or **-е** by replacing the final vowel by **-её**. Most comparative adverbs formed in this way are identical to short-form comparative adjectives (*see also page 57*):

Она едет быстрее/медленнее She is driving faster/more slowly

Она рассказывает интереснее She narrates in a more interesting way

Он поступил правильно He acted more correctly

Она спросила настойчивее She asked more insistently

Она отвётила вежливее She answered more politely

Я слушал внимательнее I listened more attentively

Он писал грамотнее He wrote in a more literate fashion

(b) Adverbs of more than two syllables have an alternative comparative in **более** 'more', e.g. **более внимательно** 'more attentively'. **Более** is also used to form the comparative of adverbs in **-ически**:

Они воевали более героически They fought more heroically

Они правят страной более демократически They run the country more democratically

(c) 'Reverse' comparatives with **менее** are formed from adverbs in **-о/-е** and **-ически** (**менее ласково** 'less affectionately', **менее физически** 'less physically').

(d) Many comparative adverbs are identical with short-form comparatives that undergo consonant mutation, and some others (*see also pages 58–59*):

Она говорила громче She spoke more loudly

Самолёт летел выше The aircraft was flying higher

Он чаще пишет He writes more frequently

Мы разговаривали тише We were chatting more quietly

Она пришла позже She arrived later

Она работает больше She works harder

Он жалуется меньше He complains less

Он ведёт себя лучше/хуже He behaves better/worse

Constructions with the comparative adverb

(a) The adverb is used with:

(i) **чем** 'than':

Он живёт дальше от города, чем я He lives further from the town than I do

Она рассказала гораздо подробнее, чем он She narrated in much more detail than he did

(ii) the genitive case:

Он пришёл раньше меня He arrived earlier than I did

(iii) **на** + accusative (quantifying a difference):

Город на пять километров ближе The town is 5 kilometres nearer

(iv) **чем ... тем** 'the ... the':

чем глубже, тем лучше the deeper the better

(v) **как можно** 'as .. as possible':

Он отвётил как можно веселее He answered as cheerfully as he could

(b) Many comparatives can also be used as **predicative adverbs**:

Сегодня холоднее/теплее It is colder/warmer today

Светлее/ темнее It is lighter/darker

Проще согласиться It is simpler to agree

The superlative adverb

The superlative adverb is formed by combining a comparative adverb with **всего** to express a comparison with things: **Больше всего** я люблю шоколад 'Most of all I like chocolate' (i.e. more than anything else), and with **всех** to express a comparison with people: Я люблю шоколад **больше всех** 'I like chocolate more than anyone else does'. Note also the superlative adverb with **наиболее**: **наиболее экономично** 'most economically'.

The preposition

(a) A preposition is a part of speech used to express the relationship of one word to another: Чáшка на столé 'The cup is **on the table**' (spatial relationship), Он дрожáл от хóлода 'He was trembling **with the cold**' (causal relationship), Она из богáтой семéй 'She is from a rich family' (relationship of source or origin), etc.

(b) The word that governs the preposition may be a verb: Она забóтится о дéтях 'She **cares** for the children', a noun: нéнависть к врагу 'hatred for the enemy', or an adjective: Она сердítа на менéй 'She is angry with me'. The word governed by the preposition is always a noun: Она жилá в Москвé 'She lived in **Moscow**', or a pronoun: Она разговáривала с **ним** 'She conversed with **him**'.

(c) The commonest prepositions are primary, non-derivative forms (for *government of cases*, see page 184): **без** 'without', **в** 'in, into', **для** 'for', **до** 'as far as, until', **за** 'behind', **из** 'out of', **к** 'towards', **на** 'on, onto', **над** 'above', **о** 'about, concerning', **от** 'from', **пéред** 'in front of', **по** 'along', **под** 'under', **при** 'in the presence of', **с** 'with, down from', **у** 'at', **чéрез** 'across'.

(d) Other prepositions derive:

(i) from adverbs: **блíз** 'near', **вмéсто** 'instead of', **вокруг** 'around', **мýмо** 'past', **наканúне** 'on the eve of', **óколо** 'close to', **прóтив** 'opposite, against', **сквозь** 'through', **согла́сно** 'according to', **средí** 'among'.

! Note: Some derivatives involve primary prepositions: **вмéсте с** 'together with', **незавýсimo от** 'independent of', **ráдом с** next to'.

(ii) from nouns, combining either with *one* primary preposition: **ввидú** 'in view of', **во врéмя** 'during', **в течéниe** 'in the course of', or with *two* primaries: **в связí с** 'in connection with', **по отношéнию к** 'in relation to'.

! Note: Some prepositions derive from gerunds: **благодарí** 'thanks to', **несмотрí** на 'despite', **спустí** 'after', **сýдя по** 'judging by'.

Government of cases

- (a) Most prepositions take one case only. This may be:
- (i) the prepositional: **при** ‘in the presence of’
 - (ii) the instrumental: **междú** ‘between’, **над** ‘above’, **пéред** ‘in front of’
 - (iii) the accusative: **сквозь** ‘through’, **спустя** ‘after’, **чéрез** ‘through’
 - (iv) the genitive: **без** ‘without’, **блíз** ‘near to’, **ввиду** ‘in view of’, **вдоль** ‘along(side)’, **вместо** ‘instead of’, **во врёмья** ‘during’, **вокруг** ‘around’, **в течéниe** ‘during the course of’, **для** ‘for’, **до** ‘as far as’, **из** ‘out of’, **из-за** ‘from behind’, **из-под** ‘from under’, **крóме** ‘except for’, **мýмо** ‘past’, **наканúне** ‘on the eve of’, **óколо** ‘close to’, **от** ‘from’, **пóсле** ‘after’, **прóтив** ‘opposite, against’, **средí** ‘among’, **у** ‘at’
 - (v) the dative: **благодарí** ‘thanks to’, **к** ‘towards’, **соглáсно** ‘according to’
- (b) Five prepositions take two cases (the accusative and one other):
- (i) **в** + prepositional ‘in’, + accusative ‘into’
 - (ii) **на** + prepositional ‘on’, + accusative ‘onto’
 - (iii) **о** + prepositional ‘about, concerning’, + accusative ‘against’
 - (iv) **за** + instrumental ‘behind’ (position), + accusative ‘behind’ (direction)
 - (v) **под** + instrumental ‘under’ (position), + accusative ‘under’ (direction)
- (c) Two prepositions take three cases each (the accusative and two others):
- (i) **по** + dative ‘along’, + accusative ‘up to and including’, + prepositional ‘after’
 - (ii) **с** + instrumental ‘with’, + genitive ‘down from’, + accusative ‘approximately’

I Prepositions that take the prepositional case

The preposition **в** + prepositional case

В + prepositional case means ‘in, inside’ and is used:

- (a) with containers: **в коробке** ‘in the box’
- (b) with most buildings, places: **в аэропорту** ‘at the airport’, **в университете** ‘at the university’
- (c) with certain parts of buildings: **в ванной** ‘in the bathroom’
- (d) with certain parts of theatres: **в партере** ‘in the stalls’
- (e) with continents: **в Африке** ‘in Africa’, **в Азии** ‘in Asia’
- (f) with geographical features: **в пустыне** ‘in the desert’, **в степи** ‘in the steppe’, **в тайге** ‘in the taiga’
- (g) with countries: **в России** ‘in Russia’
- (h) with mountain ranges that have plural names: **в Альпах** ‘in the Alps’
- (i) with towns and cities: **в Москве** ‘in Moscow’, **в Париже** ‘in Paris’
- (j) with city regions: **в Отрадном** ‘in Otradnoe’
- (k) with parts of towns: **в пригороде** ‘in the suburbs’
- (l) with vehicles: Мы сидели **в машине** ‘We were sitting in the car’, Он спал **в автобусе** ‘He slept in the bus’
- (m) with clothes, etc.: Он **в галстуке** ‘He is wearing a tie’. Она **в очках** ‘She is wearing glasses’ (cf. Она **носит очки** ‘She wears glasses’)

Spatial expressions with **в** or **на**

A number of nouns combine in the prepositional case with either **в** or **на** (frequently with a different meaning; see also page 191):

Самолёт в воздухе The aircraft is in the air

Я сидёл в глубине зала I sat at the back of the hall

Они играют во дворе They are playing in the yard

В Северном море водится треска Cod is found in the North Sea

Я держу книгу в руках I hold a book in my hands

в свете недавних событий in the light of recent events

Он работает в шахте He works down the mine

! Note: Место 'place' combines with certain adjectives and pronouns: **в другом месте** 'somewhere else', **в одном месте** 'in the same place', **в красивом месте** 'in a lovely spot'.

Meanings of state or condition

The dependent noun in prepositional phrases with **в** can denote state, condition, position, or form:

Он в отчаянии He is in despair

Всё в порядке Everything is in order

Она в курсе дела She is in the picture

Машине поломалась в пути The car broke down en route

Он выбежал в панике He ran out in a panic

Она в хорошем настроении She is in a good mood

Мы были у них в гостях We were paying them a visit

Expressions of time with **и** + prepositional case

The preposition **и** is used

(a) with the prepositional case of **месяц** ‘month’ and the names of months:

в прошлом/в этом/в будущем месяце last/this/next month
 в январе, в феврале, в марте in January, February, March
 в октябре прошлого года last October
 в ноябре этого года this November
 в декабре будущего года next December

(b) with the prepositional case (singular and plural) of **год** ‘year’ and the names of particular years:

в прошлом/в этом/в будущем году last/this/next year
 Она родилась в 1986 году She was born in 1986
 в двухтысячном году in the year 2,000
 в две тысячи десятом году in 2,010
 в сороковых годах XX (двадцатого) века in the 1940s

(c) with the prepositional case of **век/столетие** ‘century’ and **тысячелетие** ‘millennium’:

в прошлом/в этом/в будущем веке last/this/next century
 Я родился в XX (двадцатом) веке I was born in the 20th century
 Каковá будéт жизнь в трéтьем тысячелéтии? What will life be like in the third millennium?

(d) with the prepositional case of **начáло** ‘beginning’, **середíна** ‘middle’, **конéц** ‘end’, of **прошloe** ‘the past’, **настóящее** ‘the present’, **будущее** ‘the future’, and of words denoting stages in a life:

в концé фильма at the end of the film
 в прошлом/в настоящем/в будущем in the past/present/future
 в детстве/в молодости/в старости in childhood/youth/old age
 в каком возрасте? at what age?

(e) with intervals (**антракт** 'interval', **перерыв** 'break'):

В антракте мы ели мороженое In the interval we ate ice-cream
В перерыве они обедали At break they had lunch

(f) in asking 'at what time?' and in some expressions involving the time of day:

в котóром часý? (= во скóлько)? at what time?

во вторóм часý just after one

в половíне пéрвого at half-past twelve

Other uses of в + prepositional case

В + prepositional case is used:

(a) after words that denote accusation, confession, certainty, refusal:

Её обвинíли в шантажé She was accused of blackmail

Он признался в убийстве He confessed to murder

Я уверён в этом I am sure of this

Ей откаzáли в вíзе She was refused a visa.

(b) in phrases such as **дéло в том, что** 'the fact is that', **бедá в том, что** 'the trouble is that', etc.

(c) in phrases denoting extent or degree: **в какóй-то мéре** 'in some measure', **в вýсшей стéпени** 'to the highest degree'.

! Note: В is spelt **во** in **во Владивостóке** 'in Vladivostok', **во всём** 'in everything', **во всяком слúчае** 'in any case', **во втóрник** 'on Tuesday', **во вторóй половине дня** 'in the afternoon', **во Вьетнáме** 'in Vietnam', **во дворé** 'in the yard', **во мне** 'in me', **во мнóгом** 'in many ways', **во рту** 'in the mouth', **во скóлько?** 'at what time?', **во флоте** 'in the navy', **во Франции** 'in France'.

The preposition **на** + prepositional case

Spatial meanings

На + prepositional case means ‘on, on top of, on the surface of’: **на крыше** ‘on the roof’, **на полу** ‘on the floor’, **на стене** ‘on the wall’, **на столе** ‘on the table’.

It is also used (*see also* **в** + prepositional case, page 185):

- (a) with the names of certain places: **на вокзале** ‘at the station, railway terminus’, **на даче** ‘at the country cottage’, **на заводе** ‘at the factory’, **на почте** ‘at the post office’, **на почтамте** ‘at the main post office’, **на складе** ‘at the warehouse’, **на станции** ‘at the station’, **на фабрике** ‘at the factory’
- (b) with certain parts of a ship: **на корме** ‘in the stern’, **на носу** ‘in the prow’, **на палубе** ‘on the deck’
- (c) with certain parts of a university: **на кафедре химии** ‘in the chemistry department’, **на филологическом факультете** ‘in the faculty of philology’
- (d) with certain parts of buildings (including theatres): **на крыльце** ‘in the porch’, **на чердаке** ‘in the attic’, **на втором этаже** ‘on the first floor’; **на балконе** ‘in the balcony’, **на галёрке/райке** ‘in the gallery/the gods’, **на ярусе** ‘in the circle’
- (e) with points of the compass: **на севере** ‘in the north’, **на юге** ‘in the south’, **на востоке** ‘in the east’, **на западе** ‘in the west’, **на юго-востоке** ‘in the south-east’, **на северо-востоке** ‘in the north-east’, **на северо-западе** ‘in the north-west’, **на юго-западе** ‘in the south-west’

- (f) with the names of islands, peninsulas, archipelagoes: **на Аляске** ‘in Alaska’, **на Гавайях** ‘in Hawaii’, **на Камчатке** ‘on Kamchatka’, **на Канарах** ‘in the Canaries’, **на Кипре** ‘in Cyprus’, **на Кубе** ‘in Cuba’, **на Курилах** ‘in the Kuriles’, **на Мальте** ‘in Malta’
- (g) with mountain ranges that have singular names: **на Алтái** ‘in the Altai’, **на Кавkáзе** ‘in the Caucasus’, **на Памире** ‘in the Pamirs’, **на Урáле** ‘in the Urals’
- (h) with **Украíна** ‘Ukraine’: **на Украíне** ‘in Ukraine’ (в Украíне ‘in Ukraine’ is also found since the country’s independence)
- (i) with certain city regions: **на Арбáте** ‘in the Arbat’
- (j) with certain parts of a town: **на окраíне** ‘on the outskirts’, **на улице** ‘in a street’, **на пло́щади** ‘in a square’, **на ры́нке** ‘at a market’
- (k) with the names of sports arenas: **на ба́зе** ‘at a base’, **на каткé** ‘at a rink’, **на кóрте** ‘on a court’, **на стадио́не** ‘at a stadium’, **на своём по́ле** ‘at home’ (cf. в гостя́х ‘away’)
- (l) with the names of events: **на заседáнии** ‘at a session, meeting’, **на концéрте** ‘at a concert’, **на матчe** ‘at a match’, **на óпере** ‘at an opera’, **на пьéсе** ‘at a play’, **на похоронáх** ‘at a funeral’, **на свáдьбе** ‘at a wedding’, **на собráнии** ‘at a meeting’, **на уро́ке** ‘at a lesson’
- (m) miscellaneous: **на курóрte** ‘at a health resort’, **на орбítе** ‘in orbit’, **на расстоýнии** ‘at a distance’, **на рóдине** ‘in the homeland’

Spatial expressions with **на** or **в** + prepositional case (usually with different meanings, see page 186)

Я сижу на свежем воздухе I sit in the fresh air

на глубине трёх метров at a depth of three metres

На дворе осень It is autumn outside

Мы отдохали на Чёрном море We holidayed on the Black Sea

Она сидела с Машей на руках She sat with Masha in her arms

ни за что на свете not for anything in the world

Он работает на шахте He works at the mine

Note: **На** combines with the prepositional case of **место** to denote motionlessness (стоять **на месте** 'to stand still'), possession (Ты сидишь **на моём месте** 'You are sitting in my place'), previous location (Машины стояли **на прежнем месте** 'The cars were parked where they were before'), conduct (**на вашем месте** 'if I were you'), priority (**На третьем месте** – экономические условия 'In third place are economic conditions').

Other uses of **на** + prepositional case

На also combines with the prepositional case of nouns that denote:

(a) transport: **ехать на поезде** (or **поездом**) 'to travel by train'

(also **ехать на лифте** 'to take a lift', **лететь на самолёте** 'to go by plane', **ехать на велосипеде** 'to go by bicycle'). Note that **в** is also used with 'being inside' some vehicles (**В машине** ехало трое 'There were three passengers travelling in the car'), though not with ships, thus: **плыть на пароходе** 'to go by steamer'

(b) support: **кататься на коньках** 'to skate', **ходить на лыжах** 'to ski'

(c) state, condition: **Он на пенсии** 'He has retired', **на ранней стадии** 'at an early stage', **Он на военной службе** 'He is on military service'

(d) climatic features: **сидеть на солнце** 'to sit in the sun'

(e) language: **он говорит на двух языках** 'he speaks two languages'

(f) time: **на прошлой неделе** 'last week'

Verbs that take **на** + prepositional case

Among verbs that take **на** + prepositional case are **играть** 'to play' (играть **на скрипке** 'to play the violin'), **жениться** 'to marry' (of a man: **Он женился на моей сестре** 'He married my sister').

The preposition **о** + prepositional case

О + prepositional case denotes

- (a) the object of thought processes ('about, concerning, of'): **думать о** 'to think about', **напоминать/напомнить о** 'to remind of', **мечтá о** 'a dream of', **помнить/вс- о** 'to remember about', **упоминáть/упомянуть о** 'to mention'
- (b) the object of requests: **прóсьба о деньгáх** 'a request for money', **призы́в о помощи** 'an appeal for help'
- (c) the object of concern: **забóта о дерéвьях** 'concern for trees', **забóтиться о дéтях** 'to care for the children'

Note: (a) the preposition **о** also takes the accusative case, in the meaning 'against', see page 204.

(b) **о** is spelt **об** before words starting with **а, э, и, о, у**, and **обо** in the phrases **обо всём/обо всех** 'about everything/about everyone', **обо мне** 'about me'.

The preposition **по** + prepositional case

По + prepositional case combines mainly with verbal nouns in the meaning 'on, after', and is characteristic of official styles:

по окончáнии университéта on graduating

по получéнию вíзы on receipt of the visa

по егó смéрти on his death

По прибытии в город он взял такси On arrival in the town, he took a taxi

Note: **По** also takes the dative case in the meaning 'along' (see page 213) and the accusative in the meaning 'up to and including' (see page 204).

The preposition **при** + prepositional case

При + prepositional case has the following meanings:

- (a) ‘attached to (an organization)’: **при университете** есть поликлиника ‘there is a polyclinic attached to the university’
- (b) ‘in the presence of’: Онá сказáла éто **при свидéтелях** ‘She said that in the presence of witnesses’; **при лáмпе** ‘by lamplight’
- (c) ‘during the lifetime of’: **при отцé/при жíзни отцá** ‘in father’s (life)time’
- (d) ‘under a social/political system, a ruler’: **при социалíзме** ‘under socialism’, **при Хрущёве** ‘under Khrushchev, in Khrushchev’s time’
- (e) ‘proximity’: **при впадéнии** Вóлги в Кáспий ‘where the Volga joins the Caspian’
- (f) ‘on, during, at’ (mainly with verbal nouns and with words denoting perception – **звук** ‘sound’, **вид** ‘sight’, **мысль** ‘thought’): **при взлёте** ‘on, during take-off’, **при виде крóви** ‘at the sight of blood’, **при звúке звонкá** ‘at the sound of the bell’, **при мысли о неудáче** at the thought of failure’
- (g) ‘at (an opportunity)’: **при первой/при кáждой возможнóсти** ‘at the first/at every opportunity’
- (h) ‘in (circumstances)’: **При какíх обстоятельствах** егó приýняли в инститút? ‘In what circumstances was he accepted for the institute?’
- (i) ‘at (a temperature)’: **при ста грáдусах** (**при температúре** в сто грáдусов) ‘at 100 degrees’
- (j) ‘despite’: **при всём желáнии** ‘with the best will in the world’

I Prepositions that take the instrumental case

The preposition **за** + instrumental case

За takes the instrumental case of nouns and pronouns when it means:

(a) ‘behind, beyond, on the other side of’: **за домом** ‘behind the house’. Common phrases include **за городом** ‘out of town, in the country’, **за границей** ‘abroad’, **за дверью** ‘outside the door’, **за окном** ‘outside the window’, **за рулём** ‘at the wheel’, **за столом** ‘at the table’ (also **за завтраком** ‘at breakfast’, **за обедом** ‘at lunch’, **за ужином** ‘at supper’, **за чаем** ‘at tea’), **за углом** ‘round the corner’.

! Note: **Замужем** means ‘married’ (of a woman): **Она замужем за Иваном** ‘She is married to Ivan’.

(b) ‘after, in succession (in space and time)’: **Ученики повторяли за мной** ‘The pupils were repeating after me’, **час за часом** ‘hour after hour’

(c) pursuit, supervision: **охотиться за** (тиграми) ‘to hunt (to capture) tigers’ (cf. **охотиться на** тигров ‘to hunt [to kill] tigers’), **гнаться/по- за** ‘to chase after’, **следовать/по- за** ‘to follow’, **смотреть за** (детей) ‘to look after (the children)’

Котёнок наблюдает за кроликом The kitten is observing the rabbit

Я слежу за развитием событий I follow the development of events

(d) ‘fetching, obtaining, for’ (also figurative):

Он идёт за водой He is going for water

Она зашла за подругой She called for her friend

Мы стояли в очереди за хлебом We stood in a queue for bread

Он пришёл за советом He has come for advice

Он обратился к ней за поддержкой He turned to her for support

! Note: **За** also takes the accusative case, see pages 200–201.

The preposition **междú** + instrumental case

Междú + instrumental case means ‘between’, in both space and time: **Междú домáми есть дорóга** ‘There is a road between the houses’, **междú почтой и бáнком** ‘between the post office and the bank’, **междú нáми** ‘between ourselves’, **междú революциéями** 1905 и 1917 годóв ‘between the revolutions of 1905 and 1917’, **междú зáвтраком и обéдом** ‘between breakfast and lunch’.

! Note: **Междú** takes the genitive plural in certain set phrases, e.g., читáть междú строк ‘to read between the lines’.

The preposition **над** + instrumental case

Над + instrumental case means ‘over, above’: **Самолёты летéли над гóродом** ‘The aircraft were flying over the town’, **Над рекой сооружён мост** ‘A bridge has been constructed over the river’, **над головóй** ‘overhead’. It is also used in contexts of dominance, work, and mockery:

побéда над врагóм victory over the enemy

суд над убийцей the trial of the murderer

Он рабóтает над проéктом He is working on the project

Она ломáла себé голову над проблемой She was racking her brains over the problem

Его коллéги смеялись над ним His colleagues laughed at him

! Note: **Над** is spelt **нáдо** before **мной**: **нáдо мной** ‘over me’.

The preposition **пéред** + instrumental case

(a) **Пéред** means ‘in front of’: **Пéред дóмом растёт рябíна** ‘In front of the house grows a rowan tree’ (note figurative use: **Пéред нáми** большáя задáча ‘We are faced with a sizeable task’).

(b) It also means ‘just before’ in time: **пéред едóй** ‘before meals’, **пéред сном** ‘before going to bed’, **пéред отъéздом** ‘before departure’.

! Note: **Пéред** is spelt **пéредо** before **мной**; e.g. **Он извинíлся пéредо мной** ‘He apologized to me’.

The prepositional под + instrumental case

Под + instrumental case means 'under':

под деревом under a tree

Он работает под землёй He is working underground

- ! **Note:** (a) Он идёт под дождём 'He is walking in the rain'.
 (b) The meaning 'proximity to a town': Она живёт под Москвой 'She lives near Moscow'.
 (c) Figurative use: под арестом 'under arrest', быть под угрозой 'to be under threat'.
 (d) Под is spelt **пóдо** before **мной**: **пóдо мной** 'under me'.

The preposition с + instrumental case

(a) С + instrumental case means 'with, together with':

Я работал там с братом I worked there with my brother
Она гуляет с сыном She is strolling with her son

- ! **Note:** It also combines with **вместе** 'together': Она пришла вместе с отцом 'She came together with her father'.

(b) Some contexts imply joint involvement:

Он попрощался с нами He said goodbye to us
Она согласилась со мной She agreed with me

(c) С can also denote 'holding', 'accompanied by':

Я сидел с карандашом в руке I sat with a pencil in my hand
блинчики с вареньем pancakes with jam

- ! **Note:** The instrumental case *without* a preposition (see page 37) is used in functional meanings: Я пишу ручкой 'I am writing with a pen'.

(d) It also denotes a concomitant feeling or feature:

Она читала с интересом She read with interest
Он говорит с акцентом He speaks with an accent

- ! **Note:** С is spelt **co** in the phrases **со временем** 'in the course of time', **со всеми** 'with everyone', **со мной** 'with me', **со столом** 'with a table', etc. It also takes the accusative and genitive cases, see pages 184, 210.

I Prepositions that take the accusative case

The preposition **в** + accusative case

В + accusative case is used to denote **direction to/into** in the following contexts:

(a) the locations referred to in the section on **в** + the prepositional case (*see pages 185–186*):

Я еду в аэропорт I am driving to the airport

Он попал в университет He got into the university

Самолёт поднялся в воздух The plane rose into the air

Ветврач взял котёнка в руки The vet took the kitten in his hands

Позвони в Москву Ring Moscow

(b) vehicles:

Она села в автобус She got into the bus

(c) states or conditions:

Он пришёл в отчаяние He despaired

Она привела всё в порядок She put everything in order

Я ввёл его в курс дела I put him in the picture

Она отправилась в путь She set off on her way

Он впал в панику He panicked

Она привела меня в хорошее настроение She put me in a good mood

Я иду к ним в гости I am going to pay them a visit

Temporal meanings of в + accusative case**B + accusative case** is used

- (a) in telling the time (*see pages 94–95*);
- (b) with the accusative case of **days** (**в первый день войны** ‘on the first day of the war’, **в будни** ‘on working days’, **в выходные дни** ‘on days off’), and **days of the week**:

в среду, в четверг on Wednesday, on Thursday

в эту пятницу, в прошлую субботу this Friday, last Saturday
в будущее воскресенье next Sunday

- (c) with **parts of days**, when qualified by pronouns or adjectives:

в это утро, в этот вечер that morning, that evening
в белые ночи on white nights

- (d) with **seasons of the year, weeks, months, years**, when qualified by pronouns, adjectives, or **первый** ‘first’ (for **на** + other ordinals, *see page 203*):

в ту зиму that winter

в первые недели осени in the first weeks of autumn

в летние месяцы in the summer months

в послевоенные годы in the post-war years

- (e) with **general time words**:

в атомный век in the atomic age

Мы живём в историческое время We live in an historic time

во время урока during the lesson

в течение десяти минут in the course of ten minutes

! Note: **В течение** is used with times and activities, **во время** only with activities.

- (f) with ages:

Он женился в 18 лет He married at the age of 18

- (g) to denote **recurrence**:

3.000 рублей в месяц 3,000 roubles a month

(h) to denote **the state of the weather**:

В плохую погоду он сидит дома In bad weather he stays in

(i) to denote **the time taken to perform an action**:

Она выздоровела в пять недель She recovered in 5 weeks

(j) in combination with **cardinal or ordinal numerals + раз**:

во второй раз for the second time

в пять раз больше five times bigger/more

Other uses of в + accusative case

В + accusative case is also used

(a) to denote the object of:

(i) **aiming, wounding, knocking**: стрелять в цель ‘to shoot at the target’, Он ранен в голову ‘He is wounded in the head’, стучать в дверь ‘to knock at the door’

(ii) **playing a game**: играть в футбол ‘to play football’

(iii) **belief**: Она верит в Бога ‘She believes in God’

(b) to denote ‘**looking through/in**’: Я смотрю в окно ‘I look through the window’, Я смотрю в зеркало ‘I look in the mirror’;(c) to denote **reaction, purpose, representation, etc.**: в обмен на квартиру ‘in exchange for an apartment’, в ответ на письмо ‘in answer to a letter’, получить браслет в подарок ‘to receive a bracelet as a present’, приём в честь делегации ‘a reception in honour of the delegation’

The preposition **за** + accusative case

За + accusative case is used to denote:

(a) **direction** to the locations referred to in the section on **за** + instrumental case (see page 194): Мы поехали **за город** ‘We drove out of town’ (cf. Мы живём **за городом** ‘We live out of town’), Он сел **за стол** ‘He sat down at the table’, Они ездили **за границу** ‘They went abroad’.

! Note: Она вышла замуж **за Ивана** ‘She married Ivan’ (cf. Она замужем **за Иваном** ‘She is married to Ivan’).

(b) **excess**:

Сего́дня мороз **за тридцать** гра́дусов There are over thirty degrees of frost today

Было **за полночь** It was past midnight

Ему **за сорок** He is over forty

(c) **contact, seizure**:

Он взял её **за руку** He took her by the hand

Он схватился **за голову** He clutched his head

(d) **responsibility, proxy**:

Он отвечает **за мальчиков** He is responsible for the boys

Я рад **за тебя** I am glad for you

Она боится **за сына** She is afraid for her son

(e) **the object of struggle**:

Они боролись **за социализм** They struggled for socialism

(f) ‘**tackling**’:

Он принял/взялся **за осуществление плана** He set to work on implementing the plan

(g) **recompense and retribution:**

Онá заплатíла за билéты She paid for the tickets

Медáль за отвáгу A medal for courage

Егó судíли за кráжу He was tried for theft

Спасíбо за вáшу помошь Thank you for your help

Он накázál нас за ошибку He punished us for our mistake

Он критиковáл меня за мой взглýды He criticized me for my views

(h) **temporal meanings:**

(i) 'over a period':

За 10 лет он тóлько два рáза был в теáтре In ten years he only visited the theatre twice

За э́тот год он позврослéл Over that year he matured

including the time taken to perform an action:

Онá решíла кроссворд за 20 минúт She did the crossword in 20 minutes

Он написáл запíску за полчасá He took half an hour to write the note

(ii) the time by which one event precedes another:

Он приéхал в аэропóрт за час до вы́лета He arrived at the airport an hour before take-off

Он у́мер за недéлю до Пásхи He died a week before Easter

Я заказáл билéты за пять недéль I ordered the tickets five weeks in advance

The preposition **на** + accusative case

Spatial meanings of **на** + accusative case

In spatial terms, the preposition **на** + accusative case means 'onto' (Поставь тарелку **на** стол 'Put the plate on(to) the table'), and is also used to denote direction to the locations referred to in the section on **на** + prepositional case (see pages 189–190):

Она едет на вокзал/на дачу/на завод/на почту She is driving to the station/to the dacha/to the factory/to the post office

Он лезет на чердак He is climbing up into the attic

Он поднялся на шестой этаж He went up to the fifth floor

Она поступила на филфак/на кафедру физики She joined the faculty of philology/the physics department

Они отправились на Кубу/на Урал They set off for Cuba/for the Urals

Она вышла на улицу She came out onto the street

Я подвёз сестру на Арбат I gave my sister a lift to the Arbat

Directional meanings involving boarding transport, state, language, etc. (for equivalents with **на** + prepositional case, see page 191)

Они сели на самолёт They boarded the plane

Он поступил на военную службу He joined up

Она ушла на пенссию She retired

Она перевела роман на русский язык She translated the novel into Russian

! **Note:** Other constructions of a semi-directional nature include **заказ на** (платье) 'an order for (a dress)', **охотиться на** (медведя) 'to hunt (a bear)', **жаловаться/по- на** 'to complain of', **производить/произвести впечатление на** 'to make an impression on', **обращаться/обратить внимание на** 'to pay attention to', **влиять/по- на** 'to influence', **мода на (амерканизмы)** 'fashion for (Americanisms)', **очередь на (квартиру)** 'a waiting list for (an apartment)'.

Temporal expressions with **на** + accusative case

The preposition **на** appears in the phrase **на следующий день** ‘the next day’ and in phrases that combine a time word with ordinals (apart from **первый** ‘first’, see page 198): **на третий год** ‘in the third year’, and also denotes:

- (a) festivals: **на Пасху** ‘at Easter’, **на Рождество** ‘at Christmas’
- (b) scheduling for a particular time: Собрание назначено **на среду** ‘The meeting is scheduled for Wednesday’
- (c) a time subsequent to the completion of an action: Он вышел **на пять минут** He has gone out for 5 minutes

Meanings of extent

Он на три года старше меня He is 3 years older than me

Население увеличилось на миллион The population has increased by a million

Он просит марок на 70 рублей He asks for 70 roubles’ worth of stamps

Часы спешат на семь минут The watch is 7 minutes fast

Он сдал экзамены на пятёрки He passed the exams with top marks

На + accusative case can also denote (a) projection over distance: **бег на 5.000 метров** ‘a 5,000-metre race’; (b) the object of feelings such as anger: **Она зла на меня** ‘She is angry with me’; (c) direction to an event or activity: **Он побежал на тренировку** ‘He ran out to the training session’; (d) expenditure: **тратить деньги на пустяки** ‘to spend money on trifles’; (e) authorization: **рецепт на таблетки** ‘a prescription for tablets’; (f) entitlement: **право на отдых** ‘the right to relaxation’; (g) similarity: **Он похож на отца** ‘He is like his father’; (h) exchange: **обмен фунтов стерлингов на рубли** ‘exchange of pounds sterling for roubles’; (i) reaction: **реакция на температуру** ‘reaction to the temperature’.

The preposition **о** + accusative case

The preposition **о** + accusative case denotes collision, friction, contact:

Он уда́ился ного́й о стул	He banged his leg on a chair
Она споткну́лась о каме́нь	She tripped over a stone
Она облокоти́лась о пери́ла	She leant against the railings

It also takes the prepositional case, *see page 192*.

The preposition **по** + accusative case

- (a) The preposition **по** + accusative case denotes ‘up to and including’ (i) in space (**вода по щиколотку** ‘water up to the ankles’) (ii) in time (**по сентя́брь** ‘up to and including September’) (iii) figuratively (**занят по горло** ‘up to one’s eyes in work’).
- (b) It is also used in distributive meaning with numerals above ‘one’: **Мы выпили по две чашки/по пять чашек** ‘We drank two cups/ five cups each (for the distributive dative with ‘one’, *see page 213*). It is also used with **сторона** ‘side’: **по ту сторону** ‘on the other side’.

По also takes the dative and prepositional cases, *see pages 213, 192*.

The preposition **под** + accusative case

- (a) The preposition **под** + accusative case is used to denote direction to the locations and states referred to in the section on **под** + instrumental case (*see page 196*):

Мы се́ли под дре́во	We sat down under a tree
Я попа́л под дождь	I got caught in the rain
стáвить под угрóзу	to place under threat

- (b) It can also denote (i) accompaniment: **Они танцуют под оркéстр** ‘They are dancing to an orchestra’ (ii) towards a certain time: **Он вернúлся под вéчер** ‘He returned towards evening’, **Она встáла под утро** ‘She got up in the early hours’, **под Но́вый год** ‘on New Year’s Eve’.

The preposition сквозь + accusative case

Сквозь means ‘through’ (involving difficulty of passage):

Он пробирался сквозь толпу He was making his way through the crowd

Он смотрел сквозь щель He was peering through a crack

The preposition спустя + accusative case

Спустя means ‘after’ (with time words):

Он приехал спустя неделю (ог недели спустя) He arrived a week later

The preposition чéрез + accusative case

Чéрез means:

(a) ‘across, over, via’ in spatial contexts:

Он перебежал чéрез дорóгу/перепрыгнул чéрез забóр He ran across the road/jumped over the fence

Мы ехали чéрез Хéльсинки We travelled via Helsinki
мост чéрез реку a bridge across a river

(b) ‘further on’: чéрез пять киломéтров ‘five kilometres further on’, ‘through (a medium)’: .

Мы говорíли чéрез переводчика We spoke through an interpreter

and can denote intervals: .

печатать чéрез два интервáла to type double spacing

(c) ‘in, later, at intervals’ with time words:

Он вернúлся чéрез пять минúт He returned five minutes later

Он вернётся чéрез пять минúт He will return in five minutes

чéрез кáждые три часá every three hours

I Prepositions that take the genitive case

Без ‘without, in the absence of’: **без билéта** ‘without a ticket’, **скучáть без дру́га** ‘to miss one’s friend’.

Близ ‘near’: **близ дóма** ‘near the house’.

Вмéсто ‘instead of’: **вмéсто отвéта** ‘instead of an answer’.

Вокrúg ‘around, in connection with’: **вокrúг фонтáна** ‘around the fountain’, **вокrúг этóй тéмы** ‘in connection with this subject’.

Для denotes

- (a) ‘meant for’: **Этот подáрок для тебя** ‘This gift is for you’
- (b) relationship: **Это полéзно/врéдно для здорóвья** ‘This is good/bad for the health’
- (c) comparative meanings: **Теплó для ноября** ‘It’s warm for November’.

The preposition **до** + genitive case

До + genitive case denotes

- (a) ‘to, up to’ a point in space or time:

Отсюда до забóра три мéтра It is 3 metres from here to the fence

с понедéльника до среды from Monday to Wednesday

- (b) ‘before’ or ‘until’:

до перестрóйки before perestroika

Онá отложíла всё до вéчера She postponed everything until evening

- (c) ‘as far as’:

Он доéхал до углá He drove as far as the corner

- (d) ‘to’ in some phrases of extent:

Онá промóкла до костéй She got soaked to the skin

довестí до слёз to reduce to tears

The preposition из + genitive case

Из + genitive case denotes:

- (a) emergence or withdrawal from the types of location and state referred to in the section on **в** + prepositional case, *see pages 185–186*:

Он вернулся из города/из отпуска/из гостей He returned from the town/holiday/from a visit

- (b) composition, source, and selection from a larger number:

Роман состоит из двух частей The novel consists of two parts
ужин из пяти блюд a five-course dinner

Они построили дом из камня They built the house of stone

Он один из моих лучших друзей He is one of my best friends

Он стреляет из ружья He fires a shot-gun

- (c) the feeling that motivates an action:

Он солгал из страха He lied out of fear

Она отказалась из упрямства She refused out of stubbornness

The preposition из-за + genitive case

Из-за + genitive case denotes

- (a) withdrawal from the types of location referred to in the section on **за** + instrumental, *see page 194*:

Он встал из-за стола He got up from the table

Она вернулась из-за границы She returned from abroad

Из-за угла вышел мой друг My friend came round the corner

- (b) the cause of an undesirable consequence:

Поезд опоздал из-за тумана The train was late because of the fog

The preposition из-под + genitive case

Из-под + genitive case denotes

(a) 'from under', withdrawal from the types of location referred to in the section on **под** + instrumental, see page 196:

Ребёнок вы́полз из-под стола́ The child crawled out from under the table

(b) the former content of a container:

бáнка из-под варéнья a jam-jar

Мíмо + genitive case means 'past':

Он прошёл мíмо дóма He walked past the house

Наканúне + genitive case means 'on the eve of':

наканúне прáздника on the eve of the festival

The preposition óколо + genitive case

Óколо + genitive case means:

(a) 'close to, near':

Он жил óколо почты He lived close to the post office

(b) 'about, approximately':

Билéт стóит óколо сорокá рублéй The ticket costs about 40 roubles

Он лёг óколо полúночи He went to bed at about midnight

Я вéшу óколо восьмíдесятí килогráммов I weigh about 80 kilograms

The preposition от + genitive case

От + genitive case denotes:

(a) withdrawal from the types of location referred to in the section on **у + genitive case**, *see page 211*:

Я отошёл от окна I moved away from the window

(b) the initial point of a distance between two points:

От стола до стены 4 метра It is 4 metres from the table to the wall

(c) from/away from a person:

Я получил пакет от Ильи I received a package from Ilya

Она ушла от мужа She left her husband

(d) physical cause or the cause of an involuntary reaction:

Он умер от рака He died of cancer

Он дрожит от страха He trembles with fear

(e) the object of defence:

защищать от холода to protect against the cold

лекарство от кашля cough medicine

The preposition против + genitive case

Против + genitive case means

(a) ‘opposite’:

Он сел против гостя He sat down opposite his guest

(b) ‘against’:

плыть против течения to swim against the current

The preposition с + genitive case

C + genitive case means:

(a) 'from/off/from on top of/from the surface of':

Он снял карту со стены He took the map off the wall

Он встал со стула He got up from the chair

(b) withdrawal from the locations referred to in the section on на + prepositional case, see pages 189–190:

Они вернулись с завода They returned from the factory

Мы ехали с востока на запад We travelled from east to west

Она прилетела с Кипра She has flown in from Cyprus

Я возвращался с урока I was returning from the lesson

! Note: с горы 'downhill', переводить с русского на польский 'to translate from Russian into Polish'.

(c) 'since' (a point in past time), 'from' (a point in present or future time), 'from ... (to)':

Он здесь с прошлого года He has been here since last year

с часу до двух from one (o'clock) to two

начиная с понедельника with effect from Monday

C also takes the accusative and instrumental cases, see pages 184, 196.

The preposition среди + genitive case

Среди + genitive case means

(a) 'in the middle of':

среди леса/толпы/ночи in the middle of the forest/the crowd/the night

(b) 'among':

первый среди равных the first among equals

The preposition **у + genitive case****У** + genitive case denotes:

(a) 'at, close by' an object or place:

Он стоял у окна/у двери/у стола He stood at the window/at the door/by the table

Мы отдыхали у моря We holidayed by the sea

(b) 'at/at someone's place':

Он был у врача He was at the doctor's

Я отдохнул у брата на даче I relaxed at my brother's dacha

Он живёт у родителей He lives at his parents' house

(c) possession:

У неё была машина/не было машины She had/didn't have a car

У него хороший вкус He has good taste

(d) the person from whom something is borrowed, learnt, requested, bought, etc.:

Он занимает у меня деньги He borrows money from me

Я беру у него уроки музыки I take music lessons from him

Она попросила у меня карандаш She asked me for a pencil

Я спросил дорогу у милиционера I asked a policeman the way

У них можно многоому научиться One can learn a lot from them

Я узнал об этом у своей сестры I heard about it from my sister

Я купил дом у друга I bought a house from my friend

(e) a person experiencing some event, emotion, condition:

У Марии родилась дочь Masha gave birth to a daughter

У меня болит голова I have a headache

I Prepositions that take the dative case

The preposition **к** + dative case

К + dative case denotes:

(a) 'towards' an object:

Она побежала **к машине** She ran towards the car

(b) contact, connection, addition:

Он прислонился **к забору** He leaned against the fence

Она пришила пуговицу **к рубашке** She sewed a button onto the shirt

к трём прибавить два add three and two

(c) 'to/to see' a person:

Она ходила **к врачу** She went to see the doctor

(d) attitude to someone or something:

интерес к истории interest in history

Она относится **ко мне иначе** She treats me differently

Он способен **к музыке** He is good at music

(d) goal:

Я готов к отъезду I am ready for departure

стремиться к счастью to strive for happiness

переход к рыночной экономике transition to a market economy

(e) emotional reaction:

к счастью fortunately

к сожалению unfortunately

к нашему удивлению to our surprise

(f) 'by' in time:

к вечеру by evening

к тому времени by then

The preposition **по** + dative case

По + dative case denotes:

(a) 'over the surface of, along, up, down', etc.:

Он бежал **по берегу** He was running along the shore

Он спускался **по лестнице** He was coming down the stairs

Нас возили **по всей Индии** They drove us all over India

(b) a number of destinations:

Я ходил **по магазинам** I went shopping

(c) 'along lines of communication':

по радио/по телевизору/по почте/по факсу/по телефону/по

мобильнику/по электронной почте on the radio/on

television/by mail/by fax/by phone/on a mobile/by email

(d) 'in accordance with':

по плану according to plan

(e) recurrent points in time:

по утрам/по вечерам/по ночам/по четвергам in the mornings/

in the evenings/nights/on Thursdays

(f) distributive meanings (singular dependent nouns only):

Девочки получили **по яблоку** The girls received an apple each

(g) criteria for judgement:

Он судит о погоде **по облакам** He judges the weather by the clouds

(h) the sphere of activity to which the dominant word relates:

чемпион по теннису tennis champion

(i) order of priority:

третья по длине река the third longest river

(j) cause:

по разным причинам for various reasons

По also takes the accusative and prepositional cases, see pages 204, 192.

The conjunction

A conjunction is a part of speech that links words, phrases, or clauses. Conjunctions subdivide into:

- (a) **Co-ordinating conjunctions.** These include **и** 'and', **но** 'but', **тоже/ также** 'also', **или** 'or', **однако** 'however', etc. They are used to join words, phrases, and clauses of equal status: **молодой и энергичный** 'young and energetic', **Он хотел помочь, но не мог** 'He wanted to help, but couldn't'.
- (b) **Correlative conjunctions**, which constitute pairs of the same conjunction; **и ... , и** 'both ... and', **или ... , или** 'either ... or', **ни ... , ни** 'neither ... nor'.
- (c) **Subordinating conjunctions.** These include **что** 'that' (explanatory conjunction), **чтобы** 'in order to' (conjunction of purpose'), **потому что** 'because' (causal conjunction), **после** **того(,), как** 'after', **прежде (,)чем** 'before' (conjunctions of time), **если** 'if' (conditional conjunction), **хотя** 'although' (concessive conjunction), **как** 'as', **как будто** 'as if' (comparative conjunctions). Subordinating conjunctions are used to link main clauses with subordinate clauses: **Он встал, чтобы закрыть окно** 'He got up to shut the window'.

I Co-ordinating conjunctions

The conjunction **и**

- (a) The conjunction **и** 'and' is used to link like parts of speech (e.g. two verbs, two adjectives, two adverbs):

Дети бегают и прыгают The children run and jump

Он молодой и сильный He is young and strong

Самолёт летел быстро и высоко The aircraft flew fast and high

(b) It also links compatible phrases. A comma precedes **и** if the subjects of the two clauses are different:

Идёт дождь, и я сижу дома It is raining, and I am staying in

The conjunction **а**

The conjunction **а** 'and, but':

(a) makes a statement via a negative:

Это не дом, а дача That is not a house, but a dacha

Сегодня не холодно, а тепло Today it is not cold, but warm

Он не пишет, а читает He is not writing, but reading

(b) links clauses that contrast without conflicting (the same parts of speech usually appear on either side of the conjunction):

Он читает, а она пишет He is reading and she is writing

Собака белая, а кошка черная The dog is white and the cat is black

Он ездит быстро, а она ездит медленно He drives fast and she drives slowly

(c) in dialogue, often appears at the beginning of a sentence

– Пойдём в кино! ‘Let's go to the cinema’

– А у тебя есть билеты? ‘And have you got tickets?’

(d) combines with **также** ‘also’, in conveying supplementary information (in the meaning **кроме того** ‘apart from that’):

Он изучает немецкий, а также испанский He is learning German, and also Spanish

! Note: **Тоже** ‘also’ is, by contrast, used to identify with the subject of a sentence, someone already referred to: – Он изучает немецкий ‘He is learning German’ – Я тоже ‘So am I’.

The conjunction **но**

The conjunction **но** ‘but’ introduces a note of antithesis or illogicality, often linking clauses that express incompatible ideas:

Он молод, но опытен He is young but experienced

! Note: The meaning of **но** is often close to that of **однако** ‘however’ and **зато** ‘on the other hand’: Я тебе писал, однако ты не отвётил ‘I wrote to you, but you didn’t reply’, Он опоздал, зато принёс хорошие новости ‘He was late, but brought good news to make up for it’.

The conjunction **или**

The conjunction **или** ‘or’ offers alternatives:

Хочешь чай или кофе? Do you want tea or coffee?

I Correlative conjunctions

(a) The conjunction **и ... , и** ‘both ... and’ is more emphatic than **и**:

Она способна **и к химии, и к физике** She is good both at chemistry and physics

(b) The conjunction **ни ... , ни** means ‘neither ... nor’ and combines with **не**, **нет**, or **нельзя**:

Она не умеет **ни петь, ни танцевать** She can neither sing nor dance

У него **нет ни друзей, ни коллег** He has neither friends nor colleagues

Здесь **нельзя ни есть, ни пить** Here you can neither eat nor drink

(c) The conjunction **или ... , или** (либо ... либо) means ‘either ... or’:

Или я зайду, или позвоню I’ll either drop by or I’ll ring

I Subordinating conjunctions

The explanatory conjunction что

The conjunction **что** 'that' is used with the verbs знать 'to know', сказать 'to say', думать 'to think', and some other words:

Я знал, что он помо́жет I knew he would help

Она́ сказа́ла, что она́ гото́ва She said she was ready

Мы ду́мали, что он заболе́л We thought he had fallen ill

Note: (a) the retention in reported speech of the tense used in direct speech.

(b) the frequent omission in English of the conjunction 'that' (but *not* of **что** in Russian).

(c) **бúдто** or **бúдто бы** may be used instead of **что** to express an element of doubt or uncertainty: **Он говори́т, бúдто (бы) ниче́го не зна́л** 'He alleges that he knew nothing'.

The conjunction of purpose чтобы

The conjunction **чтобы** + past tense is used

(a) after words that denote desire, request, necessity, demand, etc.:

Я хочу́, чтобы́ он ушёл I want him to go away

Он попроси́л, чтобы́ ему́ принесли́ меню He asked to be brought the menu

Необходимо, чтобы́ все молча́ли It is essential for everyone to be silent

(b) to denote the purpose of an action:

Он дал мне бúлку, чтобы́ я не голода́л He gave me a roll, so that I shouldn't starve

Он купи́л компакт-диск-проигрыватель, чтобы́ все слу́шали мúзыку He bought a CD-player, so that everyone could listen to music

Note: If the subject of the two clauses is the same, the infinitive is used: **Она́ встáла, чтобы́ встрéтить гостéй** 'She got up to welcome the guests'.

Conjunctions of cause

(a) The commonest of the causal conjunctions is **потому что** ‘because’:

Он одёлся потеплее, потому что только что выпал снег He dressed more warmly because it had just snowed

The main clause usually precedes the **потому что** clause. Other conjunctions of cause either precede or follow the main clause: **благодаря тому(,) что** ‘thanks to’ (implying a favourable consequence), **из-за того(,) что** ‘because of’ (implying an unfavourable consequence), and **оттого(,) что** ‘through’ (implying an unintended consequence):

Она сдала экзамен, благодаря тому что повторила пройденное She passed the exam thanks to having revised the course work

Из-за того что он плохо подготовился, он провалился на экзамене Through preparing badly, he failed the examination

Я простудился, оттого что выходил без пальто I caught a cold by going out without a coat

(b) The conjunction **так как** ‘since’ can follow or precede the main clause:

Он снял пальто, так как ему было жарко He took off his coat, since he was hot

Так как ему было жарко, он снял пальто Since he was hot, he took off his coat

Conjunctions of time

(a) Many conjunctions of time can combine with a 'logical' *future* tense, unlike their English counterparts: **когда́ он придёт** 'when he arrives', **как только́ он начнёт** 'as soon as he begins', **прежде чем вы умьётесь** 'before you wash', etc. (*see also 129*).

(b) The conjunction **когда́** 'when, while' combines with a verb in the imperfective aspect to denote a habitual action or an action in progress, and with a verb in the perfective aspect to denote a completed action. **Как только́** 'as soon as' and **после тогó (,) как** 'after' are also used in the context of a completed action:

Когда́ мы слу́шали (impf.) **rádio**, пришлý **наши друзья́**

While we were listening to the radio our friends arrived

Когда́ закончилась (pf.) **передáча**, я вы́ключил телевíзор

When the programme finished I switched off the television

Как только́ он прочитáл (pf.) **письмо́**, он разорвáл егó

As soon as he had read the letter he tore it up

После тогó как он накачáл (pf.) **шины**, мы поéхали дálьше

After he had pumped up the tyres we drove on

(c) Other conjunctions of time include **прéжде (,) че́м** 'before', **покá** 'while', **покá не** 'until', **с тeх пор(,)** **как** 'since':

Прéжде че́м онá перевелá фráзу, онá спрáвилась в словарé

Before she translated the phrase she consulted the dictionary

Покá шёл дождь, я сидéл дóма

While it was raining I stayed in

Я подождú, покá он не придёт

I will wait until he comes

С тeх пор как он приéхал, он всё врёмя жáлуется на погóду

He has been complaining about the weather ever since he arrived

Note: (i) **До тогó(,)** **как** 'before' can replace **прéжде (,)чeм**.

(ii) **Пéред тем как** means 'just before'.

(iii) **Прéжде(,)** **чeм** can be followed by the infinitive if the subject of both clauses is the same (**Прéжде чeм** перевестý ... 'Before translating ...').

The conditional conjunction **если**

(a) The conjunction **если** ‘if’ is used with finite verbs in any tense (past, present, future) when applied to real situations:

Если ты выучил урóки, мóжешь смотрéть телевíзор If you have done your homework you can watch TV

(b) Unlike English ‘if’, **если** can take a ‘logical’ future:

Если он забúдет, я напóмню емú ‘If he forgets I’ll remind him’

(c) The infinitive may be used when there is no grammatical subject:

Если выключить свет, мóжно показáть фильм If the light is turned off the film can be shown

(d) **Если бы** + past tense is used where an action is possible only if certain (currently non-existent) conditions are met:

Если бы у менé былá игóлка, я пришил бы пúговицу If I had a needle I would sew on the button

Note: (i) ‘if’ is rendered as **ли** (never **если**) in an indirect question: **Я не знаю, пойдú ли я** ‘I don’t know if I’ll go’.

(ii) for further information on conditional constructions with **если**, see page 134.

Concessive conjunctions

Concessive conjunctions (e.g. **хотя** 'although', **несмотря на то(,) что** 'despite the fact that') express incongruity, describe situations that run counter to existing circumstances:

Он вас прымет, хотя он очень занят He will see you, although he is very busy

Они пошли, несмотря на то что шёл дождь They set out despite the fact that it was raining

The conjunctions **как** and **как будто (бы)**

(a) The conjunction **как** is used with comparative meaning:

белый, как снег as white as snow

Ваше сердце работает, как часы Your heart is running like clockwork

(b) **Как** also means 'as, in the capacity of':

Я говорю с тобой как друг I speak to you as a friend

(c) It is also used with verbs of perception, and introduces clauses:

Я слышу, как она поёт I hear her singing

Я слушаю, как играет оркестр I listen to an orchestra playing

Мы смотрим, как он работает We watch him working

(d) **Как будто (бы)** may imply variance with reality:

Он сидит с закрытыми глазами, как будто (бы) спит He sits with his eyes closed, as if he were asleep

Word order

I Word order in Russian and English

(1) Russian word order is quite often the same as English:

Ивáн страстно любíл кни́ги Ivan passionately loved books
Я хотéл написáть емú письмо I wanted to write him a letter
Он защитíл диссерта́цию He defended his dissertation

(2) In many cases, however, word order *differs* in the two languages:

Вчера в Москвé откры́лась вы́ставка совремéнного
искусства An exhibition of modern art opened in Moscow
yesterday

What factors determine this contrast?

'New' and 'given' information in Russian sentences

(a) The most important feature of Russian word order is that the most essential information, the 'new' information, the reason why a statement is being made at all, appears *at or near the end of the sentence*, while 'given' information (information that is already known) appears at or near the beginning. English, by contrast, tends to maintain the order: subject + verb + object or circumstantial detail.

(b) Sometimes the two principles of word order coincide, in which case both languages adopt the same word order. This happens in the first three sentences quoted above. In each of them the essential, 'new', information, appears at the end of the sentence ('loved books', 'to write him a letter', 'defended his dissertation').

(c) In the fourth sentence above, however, the exhibition of modern art (вы́ставка совремéнного искусства) is the essential 'new' information, the reason why the statement is being made in the first place, and thus it appears in final position. The English equivalent adheres to the pattern: subject + verb + circumstantial detail.

What is 'given' information?

(a) 'Given' information is information that is known (or presumed to be known) to the reader or speaker, or information that has already been referred to, or that is incidental to the event being described and less essential than the event itself. 'Given' information is never the point of the utterance. Thus, the sentence:

Девочка загорает на солнце The girl is sun-bathing

implies that the girl ('given' information) has already been mentioned, or that she is known to the speaker or to the speaker and addressee. The 'new' information (that she is sun-bathing), the reason why the statement is being made, appears in final position.

(b) Adverbs or adverbial expressions of time or space are another type of 'given' information. These are usually of secondary importance to the event itself, which counts as 'new' information and appears in final position:

Сегодня по первой программе будет передаваться концерт
A concert will be televised on channel one today

4 октября 1957 года был запущен первый искусственный спутник Земли On 4 October 1957 the first artificial Earth satellite was launched

(However, in answering a different question: 'When was the first earth satellite launched', the date would be 'new' information [since it is the reason why the question is being asked], and would appear in final position: **Первый искусственный спутник Земли был запущен 4 октября 1957 года.** For other examples of adverbs or adverbial modifiers in final position, see pages 227, 228.)

In the rest of this chapter the 'new' information will appear in **bold** print, the 'given' information in regular print.

Two differences between Russian and English

(a) Russian is a highly inflected language. One effect of this is that wherever an inflected form appears in a sentence, its ending will convey its grammatical function. As a consequence of this, word order can be much freer in Russian than in English (where only strict word sequence can ensure understanding). Thus, the Russian sentence:

Ольга поцеловала малόтку Olga kissed the baby

which answers the question **Что сдёлала Ольга?** ‘What did Olga do?’, has the same meaning (but with a different emphasis) as:

Малόтку поцеловала Ольга It was Olga who kissed the baby

which answers the question **Кто поцеловал малόтку?** ‘Who kissed the baby?’ In either case, differing word order notwithstanding, the noun endings show that **Ольга** ‘Olga’ is in the nominative case and is the agent of the action and that **малόтку** is in the accusative case (of **малόтка** ‘baby’) and the object of the action.

(b) Russian has neither a definite nor an indefinite article. Thus, **машина** means ‘a car’ or ‘the car’. In English, ‘a car’ implies that the vehicle is being referred to for the first time, while ‘the car’ implies that it has already been mentioned. Russian renders this distinction by word order. Thus, in:

Пéред дóмом стóйт машина A car is parked in front of the house

машина ‘a car’, as ‘new’ information, appears in final position, while in:

Машина стóйт перед дóмом The car is parked in front of the house

машина ‘the car’, as ‘given’ information, appears at the beginning of the sentence. ‘In front of the house’ is ‘new’ information (since the purpose of the statement is to say *where* the car is parked), and therefore appears in final position.

Statements as answers to hypothetical questions

(a) The relationship between ‘given’ information (which comes at or near the beginning of the sentence) and ‘new’ information (which comes at or near the end of the sentence) can be clarified by considering utterances as answers to questions.

(b) Thus, the answer to the question **Что идёт в Малом театре?** ‘What is on at the Maly Theatre?’ might be:

В Малом театре идёт пьеса <<Буря>> “The Tempest” is on at the Maly Theatre

where **Малый театр** is ‘given’ information and appears first, and **<<Буря>>** is ‘new’ information and appears in final position.

(c) If, however, the questioner knows that “The Tempest” is on at a local theatre, but is not sure at which one (and so asks **Где идёт пьеса <<Буря>>?** ‘Where is “The Tempest” on?’), then “The Tempest” is ‘given’ information and appears at the beginning of the sentence, while ‘The Maly Theatre’ is ‘new’ information and appears in final position:

Пьеса <<Буря>> идёт в Малом театре “The Tempest” is on at the Maly Theatre

(d) Similarly, the statement:

На кафедре хранятся архивы Archives are kept in the department

answers the question: **Что хранится на кафедре?** ‘What is kept in the department?’, while:

Архивы хранятся на кафедре The archives are kept in the department

answers the question **Где хранятся архивы?** ‘Where are the archives kept?’

The role of context

Word order is often determined by context, for example:

Оперáция прошлá успéшно. Оперíровал профéссор Ильин
 The operation was successful. Professor Il'in was operating

Here, оперíровал ‘was operating’ is ‘given’ information (since the operation has been mentioned in the first sentence), and Professor Il'in is ‘new’ information and therefore in final position. Similarly:

Вы смотрéли <<Алексáндра Нéвского>>? Мóзыку к фíльму написál Сергéй Прокóфьев Have you seen “Alexander Nevsky”? Sergei Prokofiev composed the music to the film

Here, Мóзыку к фíльму is ‘given’ information (since the film has already been mentioned), and thus appears at the beginning of the sentence, while Сергéй Прокóфьев is new information (since the point of the statement is to say *who* composed the music), and appears in final position.

Adverbial modifiers of time and place as given information

(a) Where adverbial modifiers of time and place are of less importance to the speaker than the event being described, they constitute background information and precede both the verb and ‘new’ information, which appears in final position (*see also pages 222–225, 228*):

В лесу раздáлся вýстрел In the forest a shot rang out
На сáммите решáлись вáжные вопросы Important issues were being resolved at the summit

Вчera начался конгрéесс A congress began yesterday
Наконéц наступíла веснá At last spring came

(b) An adverbial modifier of time precedes one of place:

Зáвтра в Кíеве откроéтся вýставка An exhibition will open in Kiev tomorrow

Adverbial modifiers of manner

These usually appear before the verb (however, see pages 223–225, 228 for examples where they follow the verb, as ‘new’ information):

Он быстро переодёлся He changed quickly

Она хорошо говорит по-русски She speaks Russian well

The order verb + subject

(a) The word order verb + subject occurs in contexts where the components are so inseparably linked that the whole sentence is ‘new’. This occurs in sentences consisting only of two elements (relating to the weather, occurrences, states or processes, existence, non-existence, beginning, concluding, etc.):

Шёл снег It was snowing

Произошёл несчастный случай An accident occurred

Идёт урок A lesson is in progress

Играл оркестр An orchestra was playing

Бытует мнение An opinion is current

Закончилась война The war ended

Начинается учебный год The academic year begins

(b) However, the principle whereby ‘given’ precedes ‘new’ information overrides other considerations. For example, the answer to the question: **Когда начинается учебный год?** ‘When does the academic year begin?’ would be **Учебный год** [‘given’ information] **начинается 1 сентября** [‘new’ information, since the date is the point of asking the question] ‘The academic year begins on 1 September’.

! **Note:** the order verb + subject may also appear in questions introduced by an interrogative (see also page 229): **Куда идёт этот автобус?** Where is this bus going to?

Word-order variants in simple sentences

(1) Word order as in English

(a) The performer of the action is the only ‘given’ information; all else is ‘new’. The word order is **subject + verb + object**:

Мой брат читает роман My brother is reading a novel

(b) The action or state is ‘given’ information. The place, cause, time, etc. of the action or state are ‘new’ information. The word order is **subject + verb + adverb**:

Это случилось ранней весной It happened in early spring

(2) Word order differs from English

(a) The action or state is known [‘given’ information]. The performer is ‘new’ information. The word order is **object + verb + subject**:

Фотографии снял я It was I who took the photographs

(b) The place/time of an event are ‘given’ information. The event itself is ‘new’ information. Word order is **adverb + verb + subject**:

Весной проводится фестиваль A festival is held in the spring

(c) The object is known [‘given’ information]. The action or state is ‘new’. The word order is **object + subject + verb (+ adverb)**:

Машину они купили вчера They bought the car yesterday

(d) The object and subject are known [‘given’ information]. The verb is ‘new’. The word order is **object + subject + verb**:

Дом мы уже продали We have already sold the house

Word order in interrogative sentences

Either (a) the order is the same as in a statement, with a sharp rise in intonation on the stressed syllable:

Вы уверены в этом? Are you sure of that?

Note: If the sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun or adverb, the interrogative word bears the stress and rising intonation. In such cases, the verb precedes or (less usually) follows a subject noun: Где находится каток? or Где каток находится? 'Where is the skating rink?' but always follows a subject pronoun: Что вы делаете? 'What are you doing?'

or (b) the 'operative' element (the word or phrase that constitutes the questioned item) appears in initial position, followed by ли:

Рéален ли полёт на Марс? Is flight to Mars feasible?

Все ли номера забронированы? Are all the rooms booked?

or (c) the speech is reported (ли follows the operative word):

Я не помню, завёл ли он часы I don't remember if he wound the clock

Word order in the reporting of direct speech

Either (a) The subject + the speech verb + a colon precede the speech (which is in quotation marks):

Он сказал: <<Почему ты опоздал?>> He said, "Why are you late?"

or (b) The speech (which is in quotation marks + a comma + a dash) precedes the speech verb + subject:

<<Ещё рано>>, – отвётил Ваня. "It's early yet," answered Vanya

or (c) The speech is interrupted by the speech verb + subject:

<<Ты не помнишь, – спросила Маша, – как его зовут?>>
"Do you remember," asked Masha, "what his name is?"

Word order and reading Russian

(a) Word order is one of the main barriers to comprehension in reading Russian. Faced with a difficult passage, it is important to identify the subject and then the verb. In most cases only one element can be the grammatical subject. Thus, in the following extract: На 32 языках говорит с миром радиостанция <<Голос России>> ..., only *радиостанция* ‘radio station’, as a nominative singular, is capable of being the subject, and *говорит* ‘speaks’ the verb. The sentence translates: ‘The radio station “The Voice of Russia” speaks to the world in 32 languages’.

(b) Similarly, in the following, only *американцы* ‘Americans’, as a nominative plural, can be the subject, and *составляют* the verb: Большину часть Интернет-аудитории составляют *американцы* ‘Americans make up the greater part of the Internet audience’.

(c) If there is no nominative subject, the construction is impersonal. It should never be assumed that the first word in the sentence is the subject. Thus, in: Передачи из Москвы принимают в далёких странах, передачи is the object of third-person plural impersonal *принимают* (it could not be its subject). The sentence translates: ‘Broadcasts from Moscow are received [literally ‘they receive broadcasts from Moscow’] in distant countries’.

(d) Another type of impersonal construction involves *можно* ‘one may’, *важно* ‘it is important’, *жалко* ‘it is a pity’, etc. In the following sentence there is no subject. The key to a correct translation lies in *можно* and its dependent infinitive *знакомиться* ‘to become acquainted’: Но теперь с информацией <<Голоса России>> можно знакомиться в любое время суток ‘But now one can become acquainted with the information broadcast by “Voice of Russia” at any time of the day or night.’

(e) Care should be taken with constructions in which grammatical information (e.g. the object accusative) appears between a participle and the noun it qualifies: Радио долго ещё будет мирно сосуществовать с набирающим силу конкурентом ‘For a long time yet radio will peacefully coexist with its competitor, which is gathering momentum [literally ‘with its gathering momentum competitor’]’.

Punctuation

I The comma

Commas are used in Russian:

- (a) to separate two or more adjectives qualifying the same noun, two or more adverbial modifiers, verbs, nouns, etc.:

красивая, молодая женщина a beautiful young woman
Я искал его в доме, в саду, на улице I looked for him in the house, in the garden, in the street

Он заходил утром, вечером, ночью He would drop in in the morning, in the evening, at night

Мы пели, танцевали, играли We sang, danced, played

- (b) to mark off words standing in apposition or parenthesis:

Саша, мой отец, встал Sasha, my father, got up

Он, конечно, прав He is, of course, right

- (c) to mark off participial and gerundial phrases:

Мальчик, читающий книгу, сдаёт завтра экзамен The boy reading a book is taking an exam tomorrow

Она сидела, читая книгу She sat reading a book

- (d) after exclamations and forms of address:

Да, я знаю/Нет, я не знаю Yes, I know/No, I don't know

Здравствуйте, коллеги! Hello, colleagues!

Эй, кто там? Hey, who's there?

- (e) between clauses linked by most conjunctions (see pages 214–221):

Солнце светит, но холодно The sun is shining but it's cold

Досадно, что он опоздал It's a nuisance that he arrived late

- (f) to mark off relative clauses:

Девочка, которая сдала экзамен, поступила в университет

The girl who passed the exam has gone to university

- (h) in comparisons:

Лучше поздно, чем никогда Better late than never

I The colon

The colon is used to introduce:

(a) **an enumeration:**

Нам нужны специалисты: бухгалтеры, юристы, врачи We need specialists: accountants, lawyers, doctors

(b) **an explanation:**

Он не работает: заболел He's off work: he's fallen ill

(c) **direct speech or a quotation** (*see also page 229*):

Он сказал: <<Я рад вас видеть>> He said, "I'm glad to see you"

I The semi-colon

The semi-colon is used to separate a series of extensive clauses:

Он исполнял все обязанности учителя: вёл уроки химии и физики; проверял сотни тетрадей; помогал отстающим ученикам He carried out all the duties of a teacher: took chemistry and physics lessons; marked hundreds of exercise books; helped pupils who were falling behind

I The dash

The dash is used

(a) in the meaning 'to be', separating subject and predicate nouns:

Кремль – центр Москвы The centre of Moscow is the Kremlin

(b) to replace a word that is 'understood':

Он любит её, а она – его He loves her, and she loves him

(c) to render direct speech (*see also page 229*):

<<Как ты постарел!>>, – сказала она "How you've aged!", she said

Glossary of grammatical terms

NB: Items in **bold** type refer the user to a separate entry in the glossary.

Accusative: In Russian, the **case** used to express the **direct object** of a **transitive verb**; also, the case used after certain prepositions.

Active: In an **active clause**, the **subject** of the verb performs the action, e.g. ‘Sam (subject) identified (verb) the suspect’ (as opposed to the passive construction ‘the suspect was identified by Sam’, where *the suspect* is the subject but is not doing the identifying). Cf. **Passive**.

Adjectival noun: An adjective that functions as a noun, e.g. ‘the empties’ (= empty bottles), ‘mobile’ (= mobile phone), ‘the Greens’ (= environmentalists), Russian *столовая* ‘dining room’, *мороженое* ‘ice cream’.

Adjective: A word that describes a **noun** or **pronoun**, giving information about its shape, colour, size, etc., e.g. *triangular*, *red*, *large*, *beautiful* in ‘a triangular sign’, ‘the red dress’, ‘it is large’, ‘they are beautiful’.

Adverb: A word expressing the manner, frequency, time, place, or extent of an action, e.g. *slowly* and *often* in ‘Sue walked slowly’, ‘He often stumbled’. Adverbs can also **modify clauses**, e.g. ‘Sue probably went home’, **adjectives**, e.g. ‘Sue is very tall’, and other adverbs, e.g. ‘Sue left extremely early’.

Affirmative: An affirmative **sentence** or **clause** is a positive statement that

explicitly asserts a state of affairs, e.g. *The taxi is waiting*. Cf. **Negative**.

Agree: Words are said to agree when they are put in the correct form in relation to another word. In Standard English and in Russian, a singular noun or pronoun has to have a singular verb, e.g. ‘he goes’ (Russian *он идёт*), and a plural noun or pronoun has to have a plural verb, e.g. ‘they go’ (Russian *они идут*).

Demonstratives also agree in **number** with the **nouns** they modify, e.g. ‘this table’ (Russian *этот стол*), ‘these tables’ (Russian *эти столы*). In Russian, adjectives, pronouns, and most declined numerals are in the same **case** as the noun they modify, and adjectives, nouns, and verbs have the same **gender** and **number**.

Animate accusative rule: A convention in Russian, whereby in some contexts the form of the **accusative** is identical with that of the **genitive case**. This applies (a) to masculine singular animate nouns: *Я вижу мальчика* ‘I see the boy’, (b) to all plural animate nouns: *Я вижу мальчиков/девочек/животных* ‘I see the boys/girls/animals’, (c) to pronouns, adjectives, and participles that agree with the nouns listed under (a) and (b): *Я знаю этих новых учителей* ‘I know these new teachers’, and (d) to the numerals *один, два/две, три, четыре*, and to *оба/обе* (also all the collective

numerals, see p. 89): *Она пригласила трёх подруг* 'She invited three friends', *Он смотрел на обоих братьев* 'He was looking at both brothers'.

Animate noun: A noun denoting a living being, e.g. *captain*, *elephant* (Russian *капитан*, *слон*).

Antecedent: An earlier word, phrase, or clause to which another word (especially a following relative pronoun) refers back, e.g. '*The man* (whom) I know' (Russian *Человек*, *которого я знаю*).

Article: see **Definite article**, **Indefinite article**.

Aspect: A grammatical category of the verb that expresses the nature of an action or process, viewing it either as continuous or habitual (imperfective aspect), or as completed (perfective aspect). Cf. **Submeanings of the aspects**.

Attributive adjective: An **adjective** placed in front of the noun it modifies, e.g. *empty* in '*the empty house*' (Russian *пустой дом*). Cf. **Predicative adjective**.

Auxiliary verb: In English, a verb which functions together with another verb to form a particular **tense** of the other verb, or to form the **passive**, a question, a **negative**, or an **imperative**. In Russian, the future of the verb *быть* 'to be' combines, as an auxiliary verb, with the infinitive of imperfective verbs to form the future of those verbs, e.g. *Я буду работать* 'I will work', while the past and future tenses and the conditional mood of *быть* combine with the short forms of perfective passive participles to express past, future, and conditional meanings,

e.g. *он был назначен* 'he was appointed', *он будет назначен* 'he will be appointed', *он бы был бы назначен* 'he would be/would have been appointed'.

Case: In Russian, the form of a noun, pronoun, adjective, or numeral that shows its function within the **clause** (e.g. whether it is the **subject** or **object**). Russian has six cases (**nominative**, **accusative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **instrumental**, and **prepositional**).

Clause: A sentence, or part of a sentence, consisting of a **subject** and a **verb**, e.g. *Mike snores*, or a structure containing **participles** or **infinitives** (with no subject), e.g. '*While waiting* for a bus, I fell asleep' or 'I asked her *to call a taxi*'.

Collective: A term applied to nouns that denote a group of beings or objects, e.g. *herd* (Russian *стадо*), *clientele* (Russian *клиентура*), *luggage* (Russian *багаж*). In Russian, there are also collective numerals (for the numbers from two to ten), which denote a group of individuals, e.g. *две* ('two'), *три* ('three'), *десятеро* ('ten'), or combine with **plural-only nouns**.

Comparative: The form of an **adjective** or **adverb** used when comparing one thing with another, to express a greater degree of a quality, e.g. *cheaper*, *more expensive*, *more accurately* in '*this book is cheaper*', '*a more expensive holiday*', '*he described it more accurately*'. Cf. **Superlative**.

Compound: A word or phrase created by putting two or more existing forms together. In English and Russian, compounds are sometimes

written as one word, sometimes as two, and sometimes hyphenated, e.g. *motorway* (Russian *автомагистраль*), *good-humoured* (Russian *добродушный*), *drawing board* (Russian *чертёжная доска*), *bow tie* (Russian *галстук-бабочка*).

Conditional: A verb form which expresses what *would* happen, or *would have* happened, if something else (had) occurred. English normally uses *if* with a form of the **auxiliary verb** *would* to express this notion: *If I won the lottery ... I would buy a car.* / *If I had won... I would have bought....* Russian uses the particle *бы*: *Я поехал бы, если бы было время* 'I would have gone if there had been time'.

Conjugate: To list the different forms or inflections of a verb as they vary according to tense, number, person, or voice, e.g. the verb 'to read' is conjugated in the present tense as follows: (I) *read*, (you) *read*, (he/she/it) *reads*, (we) *read*, (you) *read*, (they) *read*. Cf. the equivalent Russian conjugation of *читать*: (я) *читаю*, (ты) *читаешь*, (он/она/оно) *читает*, (мы) *читаем*, (вы) *читаете*, (они) *читают*.

Conjugation: In inflected languages, a class to which a verb is assigned according to how it is **conjugated**. In Russian, *читать* belongs to the first (or -e) conjugation and *говорить* belongs to the second (or -и/-я) conjugation.

Conjunction: A word whose function is to join single words, **clauses**, or **phrases**. Co-ordinating conjunctions (notably *and* and *or*) join words, clauses, or phrases, e.g. 'John *and* Mary', 'I'll go to the cinema *or* meet my friend for dinner'. Subordinating

conjunctions (e.g. *that*, *because*, *while*) join clauses, e.g. 'I think *that* he is wrong', 'They left *because* it was late', 'I'll push *while* you lift'. Correlative conjunctions consist of words corresponding to each other and regularly used together, e.g. *both ... and*, *either ... or*.

Consonant: A speech sound that is produced with some restriction on the flow of air, e.g. *b*, *ch*, *r*. It can be combined with a **vowel** to form a syllable.

Consonant mutation: The change in a consonant when it occurs adjacent to another sound.

Continuous: A verb form indicating that an action or process is or was ongoing, e.g. 'He *is waiting*', 'She *was laughing*'. Also known as *progressive*.

Dative: In Russian, the **case** used to express the **indirect object** of a verb; also, the case used after certain prepositions and certain verbs.

Declension: In inflected languages, the class to which a noun is assigned according to how it is **declined**. Russian has three declensions. The first affects masculine nouns (except for those ending in -a or -я) and neuter nouns, the second feminine nouns (except for those ending in a soft sign), and the third feminine soft-sign nouns.

Decline: To list the different forms or inflections of a noun, adjective, pronoun, or numeral as they vary according to **case**. In English, only pronouns can really be said to decline, e.g. *he*, *him*.

Definite article: In English, the word *the*, which introduces a noun phrase and implies that the thing mentioned has already been mentioned or is common knowledge, e.g. ‘*the book on the table*’. Russian has no definite article, but achieves the same effect through word order (with the thing which has already been mentioned in first position in the sentence, e.g. *Книга на столе* ‘The book is on the table’), or by using words such as *этот* ‘this’. Cf. **Indefinite article**.

Delimitation: A process by which the meaning of an adjective is limited to a particular sphere, e.g. *Страна богаты лесом* ‘The country is rich in forest’.

Demonstrative: A word indicating the person or thing referred to, e.g. *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* in ‘*this book*’ (Russian *эта книга*), ‘*that house*’ (Russian *тот дом*), ‘*these books*’ (Russian *эти книги*), ‘*those people*’ (Russian *те люди*).

Direct object: A word or phrase governed by a verb, e.g. *dogs* in ‘She loves dogs’ (Russian *Она любит собак*). In an **active** sentence, the person or thing affected by the action is the direct object. In Russian, the direct object is usually expressed by the accusative case. Cf. **Indirect object**.

Direct speech: In direct speech, the speaker’s words or thoughts are presented unchanged, using quotation marks, e.g. ““*The shops are still open,*” said Jill’. Russian uses «» or a dash to show direct speech. Cf. **Indirect speech**.

Emphatic pronoun: The pronouns *myself*, *himself*, *themselves*, etc., used for emphasis or to personalize,

e.g. ‘I did it *myself*’. Russian uses *сам*: *Я сам сделал это*.

Ending: A letter or letters added to the stem of a word when it is declined or conjugated, e.g. (in English) *dogs*, *laughed*, (in Russian) *вода* ‘water’, *на столе* ‘on the table’, *зелёными* (instrumental plural) ‘green’, *пишу* ‘I write’, *писала* ‘she was writing’).

Feminine: see **Gender**.

Finite: A verb form which has a specific **tense**, **number**, and **person**, e.g. *rings* in ‘She *rings* the doctor’ (Russian *Она звонит врачу*). Here, *rings/звонит* is the third-person singular present tense of the verb *to ring/звонить*. A **clause** with a finite verb is called a **finite clause**. Cf. **Non-finite**.

Fleeting vowel: A vowel (*e*, *ë*, or *o*) that appears in some forms of a Russian word, but not in others, e.g. *e* in *болен* (masculine short form of *больной* ‘sick’), *ë* in *сестрё* (genitive plural of *сестра* ‘sister’), *o* in *сон* ‘sleep’ (genitive singular *сна*), *разобью* (first-person singular of *разбить* ‘to smash’).

Future: The future **tense** is used when the time of the event described has not yet happened. English uses the auxiliary verbs *shall* and *will*, the present continuous, and *going to*, to express this notion: ‘*I shall meet you in the restaurant*’, ‘*They will be pleased*’, ‘*We’re leaving at six*’, ‘*I’m going to buy a new car*’. To express **imperfective** future meaning, Russian uses the future tense of *быть* + imperfective infinitive, e.g. *Я буду работать*, ‘*I shall work*’ or ‘*I shall be working*’. To express **perfective** future meaning, Russian uses conjugated forms of the

perfective verb, e.g. *Я спрошу́* 'I shall ask'. Cf. **Aspect**.

Gender: In some languages, nouns and pronouns are divided into grammatical classes called genders. The gender of a noun or pronoun can affect the form of words such as verbs or adjectives that accompany them and may need to agree with them in gender. Russian has three genders, **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**. The gender of a Russian noun can usually be identified from its ending: nouns ending in a consonant or -*й* are masculine (e.g. *стул* 'chair', *край* 'edge'); most nouns ending in -*а* or -*я* are feminine (e.g. *дыма* 'hole', *шея* 'neck'), and nouns ending in -*о* or -*е* are neuter (e.g. *окно* 'window', *море* 'sea'). Gender in Russian applies in the singular only. Plural nouns and pronouns do not exhibit gender.

Genitive: In Russian, the **case** used to express possession; also, the case used after most cardinal numerals and after **indefinite numerals**, certain prepositions, and certain verbs.

Gerund: In English, a verb form in -ing that functions like a noun, e.g. *running* in 'She loves *running*' (cf. the Russian use of the **infinitive** in this meaning: *Она любит бегать*). By contrast, the Russian gerund is a verbal adverb that replaces a clause. The imperfective gerund usually ends in -*я* (e.g. *Он стоит, куря* 'He stands, *smoking*'), the perfective in -*в* (e.g. *Поужинав, он встал* 'Having dined, he got up').

Govern: A word requiring a noun or pronoun to be in a particular **case** is said to govern the noun or pronoun (e.g. the Russian verb *владе́ть* 'to

own' governs the instrumental case, and the preposition *через* 'across' governs the accusative case).

Hard consonant: A consonant that appears at the end of a word (e.g. final -*м* in *нем* 'no'), or is followed by *а*, *ы*, *о*, *у*, or (rarely) *э* (e.g. *з* and *м* in *газета* 'newspaper', *и* in *чёрный* 'black', *л* and *в* in *слово* 'word', *ð* and *м* in *дýма* 'duma'). Exceptions are the consonants *ч* and *щ* which are always soft even if at the end of a word or followed by the above-listed vowels, and *ж*, *и*, and *ш* which are always hard. Cf. **Soft consonant**.

Historic present: Use of the present tense in order to make the description of a past event more vivid, e.g. 'Suddenly he *breaks* into a run'.

Imperative: The form of the verb used to express a command, e.g. *come* in 'Come here!'

Imperfective: see **Aspect**.

Impersonal construction: A construction in which an action or state does not involve a specific person or thing as the grammatical subject, e.g. *Стемнело* 'It grew dark', *Как тебе зовут?* 'What is your name?'

Inanimate noun: A noun denoting a non-living thing, e.g. *hall*, *happiness* (Russian *зал*, *счастье*).

Indeclinable: A term applied to a noun, pronoun, or adjective that has no **inflections**. In English, the pronoun *you* is indeclinable (whereas *I*, *he*, *she*, and *they* change to *me*, *him*, *her*, and *them* in the object case, e.g. the dog bit *me/you/him/her/them*). In Russian, many loanwords are indeclinable

(e.g. *такси* 'taxi', *беиг* 'beige'), as are the possessive pronouns *егó*, 'his/its', *её* 'her(s)/its', *их* 'their(s)'.

Indefinite adverb: An adverb that does not refer to any place, time, manner, etc. in particular, e.g. *somewhere*, *sometime*, *somewhat* (Russian *где-то*, *когда-то*, *как-то*).

Indefinite article: In English, the word *a/an*, which introduces a noun phrase and implies that the thing mentioned is non-specific, e.g. 'she bought *a book*'. Russian has no indefinite article, but achieves the same effect through word order (with an object mentioned for the first time appearing at the end of the sentence, e.g. *На столе лежит карта* 'A map is lying on the table'). Cf. **Definite article**.

Indefinite numeral: In Russian, a numeral that denotes an indefinite quantity, e.g. *много* 'much, many', *несколько* 'several'.

Indefinite pronoun: A pronoun that does not refer to any person or thing in particular, e.g. *someone* (Russian *кто-то*), *something* (Russian *что-то*), *anyone* (Russian *кто-нибудь*), *anything* (Russian *что-нибудь*).

Indicative: The form of a verb used to express a simple statement of fact, when an event is considered to be definitely taking place or to have taken place, e.g. 'He is *asleep*' (Russian *Он спит*), 'He fell *asleep*' (Russian *Он заснул*). Cf. **Subjunctive**.

Indirect object: A word or phrase referring to the person who receives the **direct object**, e.g. *the driver* in the sentences 'She gave the ticket to the *driver*' or 'She gave *the driver* the ticket'. In Russian, the indirect object

is usually expressed by the dative case, e.g. *Она подарила часы сыну* 'She gave the watch to her son'. Cf. **Direct object**.

Indirect speech: In indirect speech, the speaker's words or thoughts are reported in a subordinate clause using a reporting verb. In English a change of tense and person is needed, e.g. 'He said "*I want a drink*"' (direct speech) becomes 'He said *he wanted* a drink'. In Russian, only the person changes, not the tense, e.g. *Он сказал: «Я голоден»* 'He said "I'm hungry"' becomes *Он сказал, что он голоден* 'He said that he was hungry'.

Infinitive: The basic form of the verb, e.g. *laugh*, *damage*, *be*. It is not bound to a particular subject or tense and in English is often preceded by *to* or by another verb, e.g. 'I want *to see* her', 'She came *to see* me', 'Let me *see*'. Russian infinitives end in *-ть*, *-ти*, or *-чь* (e.g. *нуждаться* 'to write', *всем* 'to lead', *мочь* 'to be able').

Inflection: A change in the form of a word (usually the ending), to express tense, gender, number, or case, etc., e.g. the English plural ending *-s* in 'cars' or the past tense inflection *-ed* in 'I visited my uncle'. Russian is a highly-inflected language in which nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and numerals decline, and verbs conjugate. Cf. **Case**, **Conjugate**, **Conjugation**, **Declension**, and **Decline**.

Instrumental: In Russian, the **case** used to express the means by which something is done; also, the case used after certain prepositions and certain verbs.

Interrogative adverb: An adverb used to ask questions, e.g. *how* in ‘*How are you?*’ (Russian *Как вы поживаёте?*) or *when* in ‘*When will they arrive?*’ (Russian *Когда они приедут?*).

Interrogative pronoun: A pronoun used to ask questions, e.g. *which* in ‘*Which do you want?*’ (Russian *Какой вы хотите?*).

Intonation: The use of the pitch of the voice to convey meaning, e.g. *Well?* *Did you ask her?* (rising intonation) and *Well! I've never been so insulted!* (falling intonation). Different languages have different intonation patterns.

Intransitive verb: A verb not taking a direct object, e.g. *slept* in ‘*He slept soundly*’ (Russian *Он крепко спал*), and *read* in ‘*He can't read*’ (Russian *Он не умеет читать*). Cf. **Transitive verb**.

Invariable: another term for **indeclinable** (when referring to nouns, adjectives, and pronouns). Adverbs and gerunds are also invariable in Russian.

Irregular verb: In English, a verb such as *sing* whose inflections do not follow one of the usual conjugation patterns of the language (past *sang* by contrast with the usual past tense suffix -ed, e.g. *walked*). In Russian, the only truly irregular verbs are *бежать* ‘to run’, *дать* ‘to give’, *есть* ‘to eat’, and *хотеть* ‘to want’. Cf. **Regular verb**.

Loanword: A word borrowed from another language, e.g. Russian *кофе* ‘coffee’.

Locative case: A term used as an alternative to the prepositional case

to describe prepositional phrases that denote location and are introduced by *в* ‘in’ or *на* ‘on’: *в доме* ‘in the house’, *на столе* ‘on the table’. Some nouns have special locative forms in stressed *у*, *ю*, or *и*: *в лесу* ‘in the forest’, *на краю* ‘on the edge’, *на двери* ‘on the door’.

Main clause: In a **sentence** with more than one **clause**, the clause which is not **subordinate** to any of the others is known as the main clause, e.g. *Peter stopped* in ‘*When it got too dark to see where he was going, Peter stopped*’. A main clause can stand alone as a sentence. Cf. **Subordinate clause**.

Masculine: see **Gender**.

Mobile stress: A feature of some Russian words whereby the stressed syllable changes in one or more forms of the word’s declension or conjugation etc. Stress may move from the stem onto the ending, e.g. *стол* ‘table’, genitive singular *стола*; *слово* ‘word’, nominative plural *слов*; *печь* ‘stove’, locative singular *печи*; masculine short form *дорог* ‘is dear’, feminine *дорога*; *пять* ‘five’, genitive *пят*. It may also move from the ending onto the stem, e.g. *река* ‘river’, accusative singular *реку*; *окно* ‘window’, nominative plural *окна*. In conjugation, stress shift occurs only from the ending onto the stem, e.g. *пишу* ‘I write’, *пишем* ‘he writes’.

Modify: A word or phrase modifies another word or phrase when it provides additional information about it. Modifying expressions include **adjectives**, e.g. *slow* in ‘*A slow train*’, and **adverbs**, e.g. *slowly* in ‘*The train moved slowly*’.

Negative: A negative sentence or clause asserts that something is not the case, using a negative particle, e.g. '*The taxi is not waiting*'. Similarly, a negative adverb (*nowhere, never*) or negative pronoun (*nobody, nothing*). Cf. **Affirmative**.

Neuter: see **Gender**.

Nominative: In Russian, the case used to express the subject of a clause.

Non-finite: A term applied to a verb form which has no specific tense, number, or person, e.g. *waiting* in 'While *waiting* for a bus, Peter *read* the paper'. Russian uses a gerund in such contexts, e.g. *Ожидая автобуса, Питер читал газету*. Cf. **Finite**.

Noun: A word that identifies a person, e.g. *milkman, girl, uncle*, a physical object, e.g. *cup, book, building*, or an abstract notion, e.g. *beauty, health, unpleasantness*.

Noun phrase: A group of words including a noun, which functions in a sentence as subject, object, or prepositional object.

Number: A grammatical classification whereby a word is either **singular** or **plural**.

Numerical: A word expressing a number. Members of the series of numbers *one, two, etc.* are referred to as cardinal numbers or cardinal numerals. Members of the series *first, second, etc.* are referred to as ordinal numbers or ordinal numerals. Russian also has a series of collective numerals, e.g. *две* in *две детёныша* 'two children', *трое* in *трое санок* 'three sledges'.

Object: see **Direct object, Indirect object**.

Oblique cases: All cases other than the nominative.

Participle: In English, a word formed from a verb and used as an adjective or as a noun, or to form compound verb forms. The English present participle ends in *-ing*, e.g. '*Thinking I was late, I hurried*' (Russian uses a gerund in such contexts: *Думая, что я опаздываю, я торопился*), and the past participle ends in *-ed*, e.g. '*I have finished*' (Russian uses a finite verb in such contexts: *Я кончил*). Russian has four participles, present active, past active, present passive, and past passive, which either replace **relative clauses**, e.g. *Девочка, читавшая книгу* 'the girl who is reading/who was reading/who has read the book', мотёр, проверенный механиками 'an engine which has been checked by the mechanics', or (using the short form of the past passive participle) function as **predicates**, e.g. *Дом продан* 'The house has been sold'.

Particle: In Russian, a word or a part of a word that invests other words or phrases with expressive nuances of meaning, e.g. *Не я ошибся!* 'I'm not the one who got it wrong!', *Hy, проголодался же я!* 'Am I hungry!'

Partitive genitive: The genitive case used to denote a part, as opposed to the whole, of a substance, e.g. *много молока* 'a lot of milk', *кусок мяса* 'a piece of meat'. Some nouns have special partitive genitive forms in *-y* or *-ю*: *тарелка супу* 'a plate of soup', *Хочешь чайю?* 'Would you like some tea?'

Part of speech: Any of the classes into which words are categorized for grammatical purposes. The main ones are **Noun**, **Adjective**, **Pronoun**, **Verb**, **Adverb**, **Preposition**, and **Conjunction**.

Passive: The form of the **clause** used when the individual referred to by the **subject** undergoes (rather than performs) the action, e.g. '*The soldier was nominated* for an award' (Russian *Солдат был предложен к награде*). Cf. **Active**.

Past: The past **tense** is used when the time of the event described precedes the time of utterance, e.g. '*Peter lived in London*'. Cf. **Present**.

Perfect: A verb form indicating an action or process seen as completed, e.g. '*She has paid the bill*'. In Russian this is rendered by a perfective past form of the verb, e.g. *Она оплатила счёт*.

Perfective: see **Aspect**.

Person: Person forms are the grammatical forms (especially **pronouns**) that refer to or agree with the speaker and other individuals addressed or mentioned, e.g. *I, we* (first-person pronouns, Russian *я, мы*), *you* (second-person pronoun, Russian *ты, вы*), *he, she, it, they* (third-person pronouns, Russian *он, она, они*).

Personal pronoun: A pronoun that refers to a person or to people known to the speaker, e.g. *I, he, she, it, they* (Russian *я, он, она, они*).

Phrase: A group of words that function together in a **clause**, e.g. *The courier* is a (noun) phrase within the clause '*The courier will go there*'.

Plural: A word or form referring to more than one person or object, e.g. *children, books, we, are*. Cf. **Singular**.

Plural-only noun: A noun that has the form of a plural but can refer to a singular object or a number of like objects, e.g. *саники* 'sledge, sledges'.

Possessive: A pronoun indicating possession, e.g. Russian *мой* 'my, mine', *твой* 'your, yours', *егó* 'his, its', *её* 'her, hers, its', *наш* 'our, ours', *ваши* 'your, yours', *их* 'their, theirs'. Possessives are used both adjectivally (e.g. *наш дом* 'our house') and pronominally (e.g. *Этот дом – наш* 'This house is ours').

Predicate: The part of a clause that states something about the **subject**, e.g. *closed the door softly* in '*Mary closed the door softly*', or *went home* in '*We went home*'. Cf. **Subject**.

Predicative adjective: An adjective that appears in a separate **phrase** from the noun it modifies, often following the verb 'to be', e.g. *empty* in '*The house was empty*'. Russian often uses a short-form adjective in such contexts: *Дом был пуст*. Cf. **Attributive adjective**.

Predicative adverb: In Russian, an adverb that is used as a predicate, e.g. *Весело* 'It's fun', *Ему грустно* 'He feels sad'.

Prefix: An element that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning or grammatical form, e.g. *mis-* and *re-* in '*misunderstand*', '*reconsider*', Russian *при-* in *прибавить* 'to add' and *ом-* in *отплатить* 'to pay back'. Cf. **Suffix**.

Preposition: A word governing and usually preceding a noun or pronoun, expressing its relationship to another word in the sentence e.g. 'She arrived *after* dinner', 'What did you do it *for*?'. This relationship can be spatial, e.g. 'The book is *on* the table' (Russian Книга *на* столе), temporal, e.g. 'He arrived *in* March' (Russian Он приехал *в* марте), causal, e.g. 'She blushed *with* shame' (Russian Она покраснела *от* стыда), etc. A Russian preposition governs one of the **oblique cases**.

Prepositional: In Russian, the **case** used after certain prepositions, mainly to express location.

Present: The present **tense** is used when the time of the event described includes the time of utterance, e.g. *lives* in 'Peter *lives* in London'. Cf. **Past**.

Progressive: another term for **Continuous**.

Pronoun: A word that substitutes for a noun or noun phrase, e.g. *them* in 'Children don't like *them*' (instead of 'Children don't like vegetables'). Cf. Russian Дети не любят *их* (instead of *овощей*).

Reflexive pronoun: A pronoun that is the object of the verb, but refers back to the subject of the clause in denoting the same individual, e.g. *herself* in: 'She blamed *herself*'. Russian uses the declinable reflexive pronoun *себя* in such contexts, e.g. Он смотрит на *себя* 'He looks at *himself*', Он купил *себя* мотоцикл, 'He bought *himself* a motorcycle', Она довольна *собой* 'She is pleased with *herself*'. Cf. also **Reflexive verb**.

Reflexive verb: In Russian, a verb that ends in the reflexive ending *-ся/-сь*, e.g. Он одевается 'He dresses (*himself*)', Я моюсь 'I wash (*myself*)'.

Regular verb: A verb such as *laugh* whose **inflections** follow one of the usual **conjugation patterns**. In English, this involves (among other things) forming the **past tense** by adding *-ed* to the infinitive, e.g. *laughed* in 'They *laughed* at me'. Cf. **Irregular verb**.

Relative clause: A clause that is introduced by a **relative pronoun**.

Relative pronoun: A pronoun (*who*, *whose*, *which*, or *that*) used to introduce a subordinate clause and referring back to a person or thing in the preceding clause, e.g. 'Peter lost the book *that/which* he bought', 'The man *who* is waiting is my brother', or 'Have you met the man *whose* sister got married?' Russian uses the relevant forms of *котóрый*.

Reported speech: another term for **Indirect speech**.

Sentence: A structure with at least one finite verb, and consisting of one or more clauses, e.g. 'John laughed', 'John sat down and waited', 'While waiting for the bus, John saw an accident'.

Singular: A word or form referring to just one person or thing, e.g. *child*, *book*, *I*, *is*. Cf. **Plural**.

Soft consonant: In Russian, a consonant followed by a soft sign (e.g. *m* in *мать*), or by the vowels *я*, *е*, *и*, *ё*, or *ю* (e.g. *n* in *нянь*, *н* in *небо*, *n* in *ниво*, *л* in *лёд*, *m* in *умёг*). The consonants *ч* and *щ* are always pronounced soft, while *ж*, *и*, and *ү*

are always pronounced hard. Cf.

Hard consonant.

Spelling rules:

In Russian, the following rules:

- (a) *ы* is replaced by *у* after *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш*, and *щ*.
- (b) unstressed *о* is replaced by *е* after *ж, ч, ш, щ, и, ы*.
- (c) *ю* and *я* are replaced by *ы* and *а* after *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, и, щ*.
- (d) the preposition *о* 'about, concerning' is spelt *об* before words beginning *а, э, и, о, у*, and *и, ё*, and *обо* before *мне* and *всём/всех*: *обо мне* 'about me', *обо всём* 'about everything', *обо всех* 'about everyone'.

Stem: The base form or root of the word to which **endings**, **prefixes**, and **suffixes** may be added, e.g. *box* in *boxes*, *consider* in 'reconsider' and *understand* in 'understanding'. Cf. Russian *книг-* in *книга* 'book', *говор-* in *говорить* 'to speak', and *-ход* in *восхóд* 'rising', *студéнт-* in *студéнтика* 'female student'.

Stress: The syllable of a word receiving relatively greater force or emphasis than the other(s) is said to receive stress or to be the stressed syllable, e.g. *wíndow*, *kárta* 'map', (stressed on the first syllable), *dedúction*, *doróga* 'road' (stressed medially), *suppóse*, *strána* 'country' (stressed on the final syllable).

Subject: The part of the clause referring to the individual of whom or the object of which the **predicate** is asserted, e.g. *Anna* in: 'Anna closed the door' or *The picture* in 'The picture hangs on the wall'. In Russian, the subject usually appears in the nominative case, e.g. *Анна*

закрыла дверь, Картина висйт на стенé. Cf. **Predicate**.

Subjunctive:

The form of the verb used in some languages when no claim is being made that the action or event actually takes (or took) place. The subjunctive is not often used in English, but can still be seen in expressions like *if I were you*. In Russian, the subjunctive is the structure used when an action is desired. It is formed using *чтобы* + past tense, e.g. *Она хóчет, чтобы я уиéл* ('She wants me to go away'). Cf. **Indicative**.

Subordinate clause: A clause that cannot normally stand alone without a **main clause** and is usually introduced by a **conjunction**, e.g. *when it rang* in 'She answered the phone *when it rang*', or *because he is ill* in 'He is not at work *because he is ill*'. Cf. **Main clause**.

Submeanings of the aspects:

Aspectual meanings other than those that denote continuous or habitual action or process (imperfective), and those that denote completion (perfective). Submeanings describe intermittent action or process (imperfective *побáливаем* 'hurts on and off'), inception (perfective *заплáкать* 'to burst into tears'), and short duration (perfective *ночáть* 'to have a nap'). Cf. **Aspect**.

Suffix: An element that is added to the end of a word or **stem** to change its meaning or grammatical form, e.g. *-ing* and *-ness* in 'understanding', 'kindness', Russian *-ка* in *студéнтика* 'female student', *-иá* in *глубинá* 'depth'. Cf. **Prefix**.

Superlative: The form of an **adjective** or **adverb** used when comparing one

thing with another to express the greatest degree of a quality, e.g. *cheapest* (Russian *самый дешёвый*), *most beautiful* (Russian *самый красивый*), *least desirable* (Russian *наименее желательный*). Cf. **Comparative**.

Syllable: A unit of pronunciation that is normally less than a word but greater than a single sound, e.g. *abra-cadabra* has five syllables: *a-bra-ca-da-bra*, as does Russian *путеводитель* ('guide'): *пу-те-во-дитель*.

Tense: The relationship between the time of utterance and the time of an event described in the clause is expressed by verb tense forms or **inflections**, e.g. '*Anna waits*' (present tense, Russian *Анна ждёт*), *Anna waited*' (past tense, Russian *Анна ждала*).

Transitive verb: A verb taking a direct object, e.g. *read* in 'She was reading a book' (Russian *Она читала книгу*). Cf. **Intransitive verb**.

Verb: A word that expresses an action, process, or state of affairs, e.g. 'He closed the door' (Russian *Он закрыл дверь*), 'She laughs' (Russian *Она смеётся*), 'They were at home' (Russian *Они были дома*).

Verbal noun: In Russian, a noun derived from a verb stem and describing the action of the verb from which it derives, e.g. *развитие* 'development', *приготовление* 'preparation', *обработка* 'processing'.

Verbs of motion: In Russian, a series of fourteen pairs of imperfective verbs that denote various types of motion, one in each pair (the 'unidirectional') describing movement in one direction (*Он идёт домой* 'He is on his way home'), the other (the 'multidirectional') describing movement in general (*Она ходит быстро* 'She walks fast'), movement in various directions (*Он ходит взад и вперёд* 'He is walking up and down'), or habitual movement (*Я часто хожу в кино* 'I often go to the cinema').

Vocative: In Russian, the form of a noun used in addressing someone. The nominative case usually fulfils this function: *Сергей Павлович!* 'Sergei Pavlovich!', but some truncated forms are used in colloquial Russian, e.g. *мам!* 'Mum!', *Ваня!* 'Vanya!' *Боже* in *Боже мой!* 'My God!' is a relic of the former vocative case (the nominative form being *Бог*).

Voiced and voiceless consonants: Consonants pronounced, respectively, with and without vibration of the vocal cords. In Russian, the voiceless consonants are **к**, **п**, **с**, **т**, **ф**, **х**, **ц**, **ч**, **ш**, and **щ**. The other consonants are voiced.

Vowel: A basic speech sound that is produced by the unrestricted flow of air, e.g. *a* in *hat*, *ee* in *feet*, or *ow* in *how*. A vowel forms the nucleus of a syllable. Cf. **Consonant**.

Index of subjects

Adjectival nouns 50-51

Adjectives

- long and short forms 43
- that take the dative 35
- that take the genitive 32
- that take the instrumental 38

long form

- agreement 48
- consonant change in formation 50
- declension of hard-ending adjectives 44
- declension of soft-ending adjectives 45
- indeclinable adjectives 51
- mixed declension 46-47
- other types of adjective 50
- uses of the long form 48-49, 55

short form

- formation 52-53
- functions 53-55
- no short form 55
- stress change 52-53

comparative

- constructions with 60
- long form 56-57, 59
- short form 57-59
- consonant change 58-59
- no comparative short form 59

superlative

- formation and usage 61-62

Adverbs 172-182

comparative 181-182

degree and intensity 178

derivation 173

formation 172

indefinite 179

manner 178

negative 180

place 174-175

superlative 182

time 176-177

Animate accusative-genitive rule 6, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 16, 21, 22, 25, 44, 51, 70, 83, 85, 87

Aspects of the verb 111-133

Preliminary remarks 111-112

Formation 111-118

- consonant mutation 116-117
- differentiation by conjugation 115
- imperfective only 112
- irregular pairs 118
- perfective only 112, 126
- perfectives in -нуть, 118
- prefixation 112-114
- secondary imperfectives 117
- submeanings 115

Functions 119-133

- future 128-129
- imperative 130
- imperfective/perfective 119
- infinitive 131-133
- past 122-127
- imperfective 122-124
- negative 127
- perfective 125-126
- present 120-121
- historic present 121
- reported speech 121

Case usage in nouns 26-42

accusative 27

dative 34-36

genitive 28-33

instrumental 37-42

nominative 26

vocative 5

Conditional and subjunctive 134-136

Conditional 134

Subjunctive 135-136

- Conjugation of verbs** 96-109
First conjugation verbs 96-103
 endings 97
- Vowel stems** 97-99
 in -авать 97
 in -ать 97
 in -евать 98
 in -еть 98
 in -ить 99
 in -овать 98
 in -уть 99
 in -ыть 99
 in -ять 97
- Consonant stems** 100-103
 in -ать 100-101
 in -ереть 101
 in -эть 103
 in -нуть 101
 in -нять 101
 in -оть 101
 in -сть 103
 in -ти 102
 in -чъ 103
 others 102
- Second conjugation verbs** 104-106
 in -ать 104
 in -еть 104
 in -ить 104
 in -ять 104
 consonant change 105-106, 116-117
 endings 104
 stress change 106
- Imperative** 110
- Irregular verbs** 107
- Tense**
 Future 109
 Past 107-108
 Present 120-121
- Conjunctions** 214-221
 Definition and categorization 214
 Co-ordinating 214-216
 Correlative 216
 Subordinating 217-221
 cause 218
 concessive 221
 conditional 220
- explanatory 217
 purpose 217
 time 219
- Declension of nouns** 5-25
Case system 5
1st declension
Hard-ending masculine 6-15
 animate 9
 genitive plural endings
 (summary) 13
 genitive plural = nominative
 singular 13
 inanimate 7-8
 in -г, -к, -х 10
 in -ек/-ёк 10
 in -ж, -ч, -ш, -щ 12
 in -ок 10
 in -ц 11
 irregular plurals 14-15
 partitive genitive in -у 12
 plural in -á 7
 prepositional/locative in -ý 8
- Soft-ending masculine** 16-17
 in -й 16
 prepositional/locative in -ю 16
 in -ь 17
 The nouns *люди* and *дёти* 17
- Hard-ending neuter in -о** 18-19
 irregular plurals 19
 stress change in plural 18
- Soft-ending neuter** 19-20
 in -е 19
 in -ие 20
 in -мя 20
 in -бе 19
 in -бё 19
- 2nd declension: feminine nouns** 21-24
 in -а 21
 in -ая 24
 in -га, -ка, -ха 22
 in -ея 24
 in -ия 24
 in -ьá/-ъя 23
 in -я 23
 Genitive plural endings
 (summary) 24

- 3rd declension: soft-sign feminine nouns** 25
- Neuter nouns in -*на*** 20
- Declension of surnames** 25
- Fleeting vowel**
- in noun 8, 11, 17, 18, 22, 25
 - in short adjective 52
- Gender of nouns** 1-3
- common gender 3
 - feminine 1-2
 - indeclinable 3
 - masculine 1-2
 - neuter 3
- Genitive after negated verb** 30-31
- Genitive of non-existence/non-availability**
- 30
- Gerunds** 147-149
- imperfective 147-148
 - perfective 149
 - verbs with no gerunds 147
- Impersonal constructions** 35, 140
- Indirect object** 34
- Nouns**
- See Animate accusative-genitive rule*
- Case usage in nouns**
- Declension of nouns**
- Fleeting vowel**
- Gender of nouns**
- Genitive after negated verb**
- Genitive of non-existence/non-availability**
- Indirect object**
- Number**
- Partitive genitive**
- Spelling rules**
- Stress change**
- Number**
- Plural (all nouns)* 4
- Numerals**
- Cardinal** 80-88
- compound 81, 83, 85, 89
- formation 81
- list 80
- Declension and usage**
- animate-accusative 87
 - approximation 81
 - as serial numbers 81
 - both 85
 - eleven to nineteen 87
 - fifty to eighty 87
 - five and above 86
 - in fractions and decimals 93
 - nought 82
 - one 82-83
 - one and a half 83
 - singular or plural predicate 90
 - two hundred to nine hundred 88
 - thousand to trillion 88
 - two, three, four 84-85
- Collective** 89
- Date and time using cardinals and ordinals** 94-95
- Ordinal** 91-93
- abbreviation of 92
 - declension of 92
 - formation of 92
 - in fractions and decimals 93
 - list 91
 - roman numerals 93
 - usage 93
- Participles**
- Formation and usage** 141-146
- imperfective passive 142
 - past active 142
 - perfective passive (long form) 146
 - perfective passive (short form) 143-145
 - present active 141
- Partitive genitive** 12, 29
- Prepositions** 183-213
- Note:** for individual prepositions, see index of Russian words.
- Definition 183
 - Government 184
 - Position of 78, 79, 81

- Prepositions that take:
 the accusative 197-205
 the dative 212-213
 the genitive 206-211
 the instrumental 194-196
 the prepositional 185-193
- Pronouns**
- Categorization* 63
- Declension and usage*
- demonstrative 67-69
 - indefinite 76
 - initial *H-* 64, 71
 - interrogative and relative 73-75
 - negative 78-79
 - personal 63-65
 - possessive 70-71
 - quantifying 77
 - reflexive 66
 - reflexive possessive 72
- Punctuation**
- colon 229, 232
 - comma 48, 142, 146, 148-149, 215, 229, 231
 - dash 232
 - semi-colon 232
- Reflexive verbs** 137-139
- conjugation 137
 - types 137-139
- Spelling rules** 4, 6, 10, 11, 12, 21, 22, 25, 43, 46, 47
- Stress change**
- in gerund 147
 - in noun declension 7, 10, 12, 16, 17, 18, 21, 25
 - in short adjective 52
 - in short perfective passive participle 143-144
- Verbal government**
- Verbs that take the**
- dative 36
 - genitive 32
 - genitive or accusative 32-33
 - instrumental 39
- Verb list** (286 difficult verbs, with conjugation, meaning, aspects, government, etc.) 158-171
- Verbs of motion** 150-157
- Simple* 150-154
- carrying, leading, conveying 154
 - list 150
 - multidirectionals 151-152
 - perfectives 154
 - unidirectionals 153-154
- Prefixed* 155-157
- figurative meanings 157
 - formation 155-156
 - usage 157
- Verbs**
- See Aspects of the verb*
- Conditional and subjunctive**
- Conjugation of the verb**
- Gerunds**
- Impersonal constructions**
- Participles**
- Reflexive verbs**
- Verbal government**
- Verb list**
- Verbs of motion**
- Word order** 222-230
- adverbial modifiers of time and place 226
 - adverbial modifiers of manner 227
 - given information 223
 - interrogative sentences 229
 - new and given information 222
 - reading Russian 230
 - reporting direct speech 229
 - role of context 226
 - Russian cf. English 222, 224, 228
 - statements as answers to hypothetical questions 225
 - variants in simple sentences 228
 - verb + subject 227

Index of Russian words

Note: The word index lists items of particular grammatical significance: prepositions, adverbs of time, indefinite pronouns and adverbs, conjunctions, verbs of motion, verbs that illustrate particular patterns of conjugation, nouns with irregular plurals, numerals, and others. The index is designed to interact with the subject index in affording easy access to all parts of the grammar.

а 215	в котóром часу? 94-95	для 206
бéгать 151-152	вмéсто 206	до 206
бeж 51	внезáпно 176	дóлго 176
бeжáть 107, 153	водíть 151-152	дóлжен 132
бeз 206	воевáть 98	достáточно 28
билибóн 81, 88	возíть 105, 152	достóбин 53
благодарý томú (,) что 218	вокруг 206	до тогó (,) как 219
блíз 206	во скóлько? 94-95	дочь 25
блóе 56, 181	все 73, 77	дремáть 100
блóльше 59, 181	всё 73, 77	друг 14
блóльше всего 182	всегда 123, 131, 151, 176	друг друга 138
блóльше всех 182	вскóре 176	другóй 177
блóльший 57	вставáть 97	дуть 99
большинствó 90	в то врёмя как 122	дáдя 6
большóй 47	вы 63, 65	егó (possessive) 71-72
борóться 101	высший 57	ёё (possessive) 71-72
бóяться 104	гасíть 105	éздить 151-152
брat 14	где-нибудь 179	éсли 129, 134, 220
брать 101	где-то 179	éсли бы 134, 220
брать/взять 118	гíбнуть 101	есть (to eat) 107
брить 99	глúбже 59	éхать 101, 151, 153
будíть 105	глядéть 147	ещё 177
будущий 177, 187	гна́ться 153	ещё не 177
бы 134, 136	говорíть/сказáть 118	ещё раз 177
бы ни 136	горáздо 60	жать 101
быть 40-41, 102, 121, 147	господíн 15	ждать 101
в + accusative 60, 197-199	давáть 97, 147	живь 102
в + prepositional 8, 185- 188, 191, 197, 207	давнó 120, 176	за + accusative 200-201
ваш 70, 72	давнó не 120	за + instrumental 194, 200, 207
вдруг 125, 176	дать 107	занять 101
вeзти 102, 154	два 84-86	затó 216
вeлiк 53	двáдцать 86	звáть 101
вестi 102, 154	двéсти-девятьсóт 88	звони́ть 104
весь 77	двóбе 89	и 214-215
взять 102	девяносто 87	и ... и 216
в какóм году? 95	дéрево 19	игráть 97
	дéти 17, 89	идти 151, 153
	деть 102	

- из 207
 из-за 207
 из-за тогó (,) что 218
 из-под 208
 и́ли 216
 и́ли ... и́ли 216
 иногдá 123, 176
 искáться 100
 испóльзовать 98
 их (possessive) 71-72
 к 212
 как 221
 как? 178
 как бýдто (бы) 221
 какýм óбразом? 178
 как мόжно 182
 кák-нибудь 179
 kák-to 179
 какóго числá? 95
 какóе числó? 95
 какóй 74
 какóй-нибудь 76
 какóй-то 76
 как тóлько 129, 219
 катýться 153
 класть 103
 класть/положítъ 118
 когда 122, 129, 151, 219
 когда-либо 179
 когда-нибудь 179
 когда-то 179
 кóе-где 179
 кóе-как 179
 колéно 19
 котóрый 74-75, 231
 котóрый час? 94
 кóфе 3
 крылó 19
 кто 68, 77 (relative pro-noun); 73 (interrogative and relative)
 ктó-нибудь 76
 ктó-то 76
 кудá (with comparatives) 60
 кудá-нибудь 179
 кудá-то 179
 лázить 151-152
 лгать 101
 лежáть 147
 лезть 103, 153
 летáть 151-152
 летéть 153-154
 лечь 103
 лист 14
 ложáться/лечь 118
 лúчше 59, 181
 лúчшиy 57, 59, 62
 люди 17
 мал 53
 ма́ло 28, 90
 мать 25
 махáть 100
 мгновéнно 125
 ме́жду 195
 ме́нее 56, 181
 ме́ньше 59, 181
 ме́ньшиy 57, 59
 местиy 102
 миллиáрд 88
 миллиóн 88
 мýмо 208
 млáдшиy 57, 59, 62
 мнóго 28, 60, 90
 мой 70, 72
 мочь 103
 муж 14
 мужчýна 1
 мы 63, 65
 мыть 99
 на + accusative 60, 182, 202-203
 на + prepositional 8, 186, 189-191, 202, 210
 над 195
 надблóго 176
 наиблóже 62
 наилúчшиy 62
 наканúне 208
 намнóго 60
 начáть 101, 132
 наш 70, 72
 не 30-31, 78, 131-132, 180
 нéгде 180
 недáвно 176
 недостáточно 28
 нéзачем 180
 нéкогда 180
 нéкого 79
 нéкому 79
 нéкуда 180
 нельзя 132
 немáло 28, 90
 немнóго 28, 90, 126
 не надо 131
 не нýжно 131
 нéоткуда 180
 нéсколько 28, 90
 несмотря на то (,) что 221
 нестíй 102, 154
 нет (нé было/не бýдет) 30
 не хотéть 133
 нéчего 79
 ни 31
 ни ... ни 216
 нигдé 180
 нíзшиy 57
 никáк 180
 никакóй 78
 никогдá 180
 никтó 73, 78
 никудá 180
 ничéй 78
 ничтó 78
 но 216, 231
 ноль 82
 носítъ 152
 нуль 82
 о + accusative 204
 о + prepositional 192
 óба 85, 90
 обýчно 123, 176
 оди́н 82-83, 86
 одииннадцать- девятнáдцать 87
 однáко 216
 оди́й ... другíе 83
 óколо 208
 он 63-64
 онá 63-64
 онí 63, 65
 онó 63-64
 опáть 177

- от 209
 от тогó (,) что 218
 пáла 21
 пéред 195
 пéред тем как 219
 пересáживаться/
 пересéсть 118
 перестáть 132
 перó 19
 петь 98
 печь 103
 писáть 100
 пить 99
 плáвать 151
 плáкать 100
 плáтье 19
 плечо 19
 плыть 102, 153
 по + accusative 204
 по + dative 93, 213
 по + prepositional 192
 под + accusative 204
 под + instrumental 196,
 204, 208
 покá 177, 219
 покá не 122, 129, 219
 поблзать 151-152
 полторá 83
 порá 133, 177
 посетить 105
 пóсле тогó (,) как 122,
 219
 потому что 218
 почемý-нибудь 179
 почемý-то 179
 прéжде (,) чем 129, 219
 при 193
 признавáться 97
 продолжáть 132
 прóтив 209
 прóшлый 177
 прýтать 100
 путь 17
 пять-дéсять 86
 пятьдесáт-вóсемьдесят
 87
 рад 55
 растí 102
- рвать 101
 рéзать 100
 ружьё 4
 с + genitive 210
 с + instrumental 65, 83,
 196
 садиться/сесть 118
 сам 77
 сáмый 61-62 (superlative);
 67, 77 (emphatic)
 свой 72
 себá 66
 сейчás 120, 176
 сéять 97
 сидéть 147
 сквозь 205
 скóлько 28, 90
 скóлько врéмени? 94
 скóро 176
 слать 101
 слáще 59
 слýшать 104
 смотрéть 104
 сно́ва 177
 снять 101
 сбóрок 87
 сосéд 15
 спустí 205
 сráзу 125, 176
 средí 210
 становиться/стать 118
 стárше 59
 стárший 57, 59, 62
 стать 101
 с тех пор (,) как 219
 стойть 147
 сто 87
 стóлько 90
 стрелíть 97
 стричь 103
 стул 14
 сын 14
 тákже 215
 так как 218
 твой 70
 тепéрь 176
 терéть 101
 тогдá 176
- тóже 215
 тóньше 59
 тот 68, 73
 то, что 69
 трáтить 105
 трéтий 92
 три 84-86
 тридцать 86
 триллион 88
 ты 63-64
 тýсяча 88
 у 209, 211
 ужé 120, 177
 ужé не 177
 у менé 30, 211
 умéть 98
 ýхо 19
 хватáться/хватítъ 28
 ходíть 151-152
 хозяин 15
 хотéть 107, 135
 хотý 221
 хúдший 57, 59
 хúже 59, 181
 цéлый 77
 чáсто 123, 176
 чáще всегó 123
 чéй 74-75
 чéм 26, 60, 182, 231
 чéм ... тем 60, 182
 чéрез 205
 чéсть 2
 четýре 84-86
 чистить 105
 что 68, 69, 75, 77 (relative
 pronoun); 73 (interrogative
 and relative); 217,
 231 (conjunction)
 чтобы 135-136, 217
 что за 74
 чтó-нибудь 76
 чтó-то 76
 чуть не 31
 шíре 59
 щипáться 100
 э́тот 67, 177, 187
 я 63-64
 юблоко 19

The Russian alphabet

Capital letters	Lower-case letters	Letter names
А	а	а
Б	б	бэ
В	в	вэ
Г	г	гэ
Д	д	дэ
Е	е	е
Ё	ё	ё
Ж	ж	жэ
З	з	зэ
И	и	и
Й	й	и краткое
К	к	ка
Л	л	эль
М	м	эм
Н	н	эн
О	о	о
П	п	пэ
Р	р	эр
С	с	ес
Т	т	тэ
У	у	у
Ф	ф	эф
Х	х	ха
Ц	ц	цэ
Ч	ч	че
Ш	ш	ша
Щ	щ	ща
Ъ	ъ	твёрдый знак
Ы	ы	ы
Ь	ь	мягкий знак
Э	э	э
Ю	ю	ю
Я	я	я